

T H E
R U D I M E N T S
O F T H E
Latin Tongue;
O R
A plain and easy Introduction
T O
Latin Grammar;

W H E R E I N

The P R I N C I P L E S of the L A N G U A G E are
methodically digested both in E N G L I S H and
L A T I N.

W I T H

*Useful NOTES and OBSERVATIONS, explaining the
T E R M S of GRAMMAR, and farther improving its
R U L E S.*

By T H O. R U D D I M A N, M. A.

The seventeenth Edition corrected.

E D I N B U R G H :

Printed by J. ROBERTSON, and sold at his Printing-
Office, Fish-market Close,

M D C C L X X.

DOBLEIA
28 MAY 1965

BOOKS printed and sold by **J. ROBERTSON**, at his printing-house in the Fish-market close.

P. Virgilii opera, ad optimorum exemplarium fidem recensita.

Horatii opera omnia, ad optimas editiones castigata.

Cæsaris commentarii, ex optimis atque accuratissimis F. Oudendorpii et S. Clarke editionibus expressi.

Sallustius, juxta accuratissimam Cortii editionem.

C. Nepotis excellentium imperatorum vitæ, ad nuperas editiones diligenter repurgatæ.

Decrpta ex Ovidii metamorphoseôn libris, notis Anglicis illustrata, a Gul. Willymotto & Tho. Ruddimanno.

Corderii colloquia selecta, cum notis Anglicis Gul. Willymotti.

Castalionis dialogi sacri, cum notis Anglicis illustrati, a Tho. Ruddimanno.

Eutropii historiæ Romanæ breviarium, cum notulis Tan. Fabri.

Buchanani psalmi.


Grammatical exercises, adapted to the method of the Latin Rudiments, published by Mr T. Ruddiman.

Paterfon's Latin and English vocabulary.

Boyer's French Grammar.

Æsop's fables, with cuts.

Also, spelling-books, psalm-books, &c. &c. at the lowest prices.

 **L**arge allowance to booksellers, schoolmasters, and others who take quantities.

P



the
com
ny
prop
who
defig
tive,
the
cate
Who
Prof
prev
ling
ved
the



T H E

P R E F A C E.

AMONG the several Instructors of Youth in this Nation, many have for a long Time complained, that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin* Tongue, commonly taught in our Schools, are many Ways insufficient in respect to the End proposed by them: That the one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is designed to teach; that the other is defective, particularly in the *Syntax*; and that the Rules of both are often obscure and intricate, and sometimes false and erroneous. Whereupon some knowing Masters of that Profession, by their repeated Solicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the compiling of a new *Rudiments*, which they conceived might, in a great Measure, be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and so contrived,

contrived, as to bring down its *Rules* to the Level of a Boy's Capacity, and make them enter with more Ease and Familiarity into his Mind. This is the End I had in view: With what Success it has been prosecuted is a Province for others, not me, to determine. However, if any thing inclines me to hope its Acceptance in the World, it is owing to the kind Assistance I have had from time to time of the above mentioned, and other Gentlemen, as the Duty of their respective Employments would permit them. What discouraged me most in this Undertaking, was the different Opinions of *Grammarians*, with the sharp Contests and Disputes they have had about the Method of *Instruction*, and the most proper Way to communicate the *Latin* Tongue to others, with the greatest Facility and Expedition. It would be almost an endless Task to reckon up the various *Schemes* that have been projected for that Purpose: Therefore I shall engage no farther in this Subject, than as it seems necessary to give my Reader a clear and distinct View of the Reasons that determined me to the Method I have followed.

I have long observed, that those of our Country, whose Business it is to direct the Studies of Youth, are greatly divided about what an *Introduction to Latin Grammar* ought

ought properly to contain, and in what Language its Precepts should be conveyed. Some are for contracting it into as narrow Limits as is possible, and not to burden the Memory of the Learner with any thing but what is essential and absolutely necessary; while others contend that this is too general, and not sufficient to direct his Practice, without the Addition of more particular Rules. Again, tho' the greater Part incline to have the first *Principles of Grammar* communicated in a known Language, there are not a few, and of these some Persons of Distinction, who are still for retaining them in *Latin*, which, tho' attended at first with more Difficulty, makes (in their Judgment) a more lasting Impression on the Mind, and carries the Learner more directly to the Habit of speaking *Latin*, a Practice much used in our Schools. It appeared next to an Impossibility to satisfy so many different Opinions: However, the Method I have taken seems to bid fairest for it. For I have reduced the Substance of these *Rudiments* into a Sort of *Text*, and have given the *Latin* an *English* Version, leaving the Master to his own Choice and Discretion which to use. And, that none may complain that the *Text* is too compendious, I have subjoined large *Notes*, which, I humbly conceive, will supply that Defect.

To

To render my Design of more general Use, I was obliged to fall in with this Expedient, which has produced one Inconvenience, namely, that the Book is thereby swelled to a much greater Bulk than I could have wished, or some perhaps will excuse; tho' the Reasons are so obvious, that it is needless to relate them. I confess I have been larger in the *Notes* than the Nature of a *Rudiments* seemed to require: but as I presume there is nothing in them but what may be useful either to Master or Scholar; and since it was never my Intention that they should be all taught, or any of them, with the same Care as the *Essential Parts*, I thought they might the more easily be dispensed with. There is one Thing more, which has considerably increased them, viz. the *Remarks* I have added on *English Nouns, Pronouns, and Verbs*, which I judged useful on a double Account; *First*, As they serve to illustrate *Latin Grammar*, the first Notions and Impressions whereof we receive from the Language we ourselves speak. *Secondly*, Because the greater Number of those who are taught the *Latin Tongue*, reap little other benefit from it, than as it enables them to speak and write *English* with the greater Exactness, I supposed it would not be amiss to throw in something in order to that End.

• Having

Ha
Unde
Mana
along
fy as
der R
I hav
ancien
from
Purpo
their
course
rest W
I have
have
of ha
have
System
Truth
which
tho' fo
I saw
own V
on the
well b
small
of, an
was co
the In
more f

Having thus given a general *Plan* of my Undertaking, all I shall say of the particular Management of it is, that I have laboured all along to render every thing as plain and easy as I possibly could, considering with a tender Regard for whose Benefit it is designed. I have consulted the best *Grammarians*, both ancient and modern, and have borrowed from them whatever I conceived fit for my Purpose; tho' not contenting myself with their bare Authority, I frequently had Recourse to the Fountain itself, I mean the purest Writers of the *Latin* Tongue. As thus I have been solicitous to avoid *Error*, so I have been cautious not to incur the Censure of having affected *Novelty*, and therefore have receded no farther from the common *Systems* than I think they have receded from Truth; retaining the usual *Terms* of *Art*, which have so long obtained in the Schools, tho' sometimes I have taken the Liberty, as I saw Occasion for it, to explain them my own Way. That I might lay no more Weight on the Memories of Children than they could well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as small a Number as the Subject would allow of, and conceived them in as few Words as was consistent with Perspicuity; leaving it to the Industry of the Teacher to explain them more fully, as he shall find necessary, without

out which no *Rules* can be sufficient. The *Syntax* is indeed longer than was to be wished ; but I frankly own, that I do not see how it can be made much shorter, without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Elliptical Rules*. However, to remove the Objection as much as I could, I have subjoined a more *Compendious Syntax*, consisting only of a few *Fundamental Rules*, which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Discretion of the Master shall direct him.

THE

PA
De LQ UO
L

Discip

inti ; a

j, k, l

u, v,

M. Qu

D. In

antes.

M. Qu

D. Sex

THE
RUDIMENTS
OF THE
Latin Tongue:
OR
A plain and easy Introduction
TO
Latin Grammar.

PARS PRIMA.

De Literis & Syllabis.

Magister.

QUOT sunt Literæ apud Latinos?

Discipulus. Quinque & viginti; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Vocales & Consonantes.

M. Quot sunt Vocales?

D. Sex; a, e, i, o, u, y.

PART FIRST.

Of Letters and Syllables.

Master.

HOW many Letters are there among the Latins?

Scholar. Five and twenty; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. How are they divided?

S. Into Vowels and Consonants.

M. How many Vowels are there?

S. Six; a, e, i, o, u, y.

M. Quot

2 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue, Part I.

M. Quot sunt Consonantes?

D. Novemdecim; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. Quot sunt Diphthongi?

D. Quinque; *ae, [vel æ] oe, [vel œ] au, eu, ei; ut aetas, vel ætas, poena, vel pœna, audio, euge, hei.*

M. How many Consonants are there?

S. Nineteen; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. How many Diphthongs are there?

S. Five; *ae, [or æ] oe [or œ] au, eu, ei; as, aetas, or ætas, poena, or pœna, audio, euge, hei.*

N O T E S.

GRAMMAR is the Art of speaking any Language rightly; as, Hebrew, Greek, Latin, English, &c.

Latin Grammar is the Art of speaking rightly the Latin Tongue.

The RUDIMENTS of that Grammar are plain and easy Instructions, teaching Beginners the first Principles, or the most common and necessary Rules of Latin.

The Rudiments may be reduced into these four Heads, I. Treating of Letters. II. Of Syllables. III. Of Words. IV. Of Sentences.

These are naturally made up one of another; for one or more Letters make a Syllable, one or more Syllables make a Word, and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A Letter is a Mark or Character representing an uncompounded Sound.

K, Y, Z, are only to be found in Words originally Greek, and *H* by some is not accounted a Letter, but a Breathing.

We reckon the *J*, called *Jod* [or *Je*] and the *V*, called *Vau*, two Letters distinct from *I* and *U*, because not only their Figures but their Powers or Sounds are quite different; *J* sounding like *G* before *E*, and *V* almost like *F*.

A Vowel is a Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by itself.

A Consonant is a Letter that cannot sound without a Vowel.

A Syllable is any one complete Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a Vowel: And any of the Six Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Consonants before or after it, make a Syllable.

There are for the most part as many Syllables in a Word as there are Vowels in it: Only there are two Kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwise, viz. 1. When *U* with any other Vowel comes after *G*, *Q*, or *S*, as in *Lingua*, *Qui*, *Suadeo*; where the Sound of the *U* vanishes, or is little heard. 2. When two Vowels join to make a Diphthong or double Vowel.

A Diphthong is a Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, so as both of them are heard.

Of Diphthongs three are Proper, viz. *au, eu, ei*, in which both Vowels are heard; and two Improper, viz. *æ, œ*, in which the *a* and *o* are not heard, but they are pronounced as *e* simple.

Some, not without Reason, to these five Diphthongs, and other three; as, *ai* in *Maia*, *oi* in *Troia*, *yi* or *ui* in *Harpyia* or *Harpyia*.

P A R S

PARS SECUNDA. PART SECOND.

De Dictionibus.

M. **Q**uot sunt Partes Orationis?

D. Octo; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium; Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Declinabiles & Indeclinabiles.

M. Quot sunt Declinabiles?

D. Quatuor; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium.*

M. Quot sunt Indeclinabiles?

D. Item quatuor; *Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

Of Words.

M. **H**OW many Parts of Speech are there?

S. Eight; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

M. How are they divided?

S. Into Declinable and Indclinable.

M. How many are Declinable?

S. Four; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.

M. How many are Indclinable?

S. Likewise four; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

A Word [*Vox* or *dictio*] is one or more Syllables joined together, which Men have agreed upon to signify something.

Words are commonly reduced to eight *Classes*, called *Parts of Speech*: But some comprise them all under three *Classes*, viz. *Noun, Verb, and Adverb*. Under *Noun* they comprehend also *Pronoun* and *Participle*; and under *Adverb* also *Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction*. Others to these add a fourth *Class*, viz. *Adnoun*, comprehending *Adjectives* under it, and restricting *Noun* to *Substantives* only. These by some are otherwise called *Names, Qualities, Affirmations, and Particles*.

The declinable Parts of Speech are so called, because there is some Change made upon them, especially in their last Syllables: And this is what we call *Declension*, or *declining* of Words. But the indeclinable Parts continue unchangeably the same.

The last Syllable, on which these Changes do fall, is called the *Ending* or *Termination* of Words.

These Changes are made by what Grammarians call *Accidentia*, i. e. *The Accidents* of Words.

These *Accidents* are commonly reckoned Six, viz. *Gender, Case, Number, Mood, Tense, and Person*. Of these, *Gender* and *Case* are peculiar to three of the declinable Parts of Speech, viz. *Noun, Pronoun, and Participle*; and *Mood, Tense, and Person*, are peculiar to one of them, viz. *Verb*: And *Number* is common to them all.

NOTE 1. That *Person* may also be said to belong to *Noun* or *Pronoun*: But then it is not properly an *Accident*, because no Change is made by it in the Word.

NOTE 2. That *Figure, Species, and Comparifon*, which fome call *Accidents*, do not properly come under that Name, becaufe the Words have a different Signification from what they had before. See Chap. IX.

NOTE 3. That the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun, and Participle, are, in a ftricter Senfe, called *Declenfion* or *Declination* of them, and the Changes that happen to a Verb are called *Conjugation*.

CAP. I.

De Nomine.

M. QUomodo declinatur Nomen?

D. Per Genera, Cafus, & Numeros.

M. Quot funt Genera?

D. Tria; *Mafculinum, Femininum, & Neutrum*.

M. Quot funt Cafus?

D. Sex; *Nominativus, Genitivus, Dativus, Accufativus, Vocativus, & Ablativus*.

M. Quot funt Numeri?

D. Duo; *Singularis & Pluralis*.

M. Quot funt Declinationes?

D. Quinque; *Prima, Secunda, Tertia, Quarta, & Quinta*.

REGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent Nominativum, Accufativum & Vocativum fimiles in utroque Numero; & hi Cafus in Plurali femper definunt in *a*.

2. Vocativus in Singulari plerumque, in Plurali femper, eft fimilis Nominativo.

CHAP. I.

Of Noun.

M. HOW is a Noun declined?

S. By Genders, Cafes, and Numbers.

M. How many Genders are there?

S. Three; *Mafculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

M. How many Cafes are there?

S. Six; *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accufative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

M. How many Numbers are there?

S. Two; *Singular and Plural*.

M. How many Declenfions are there?

S. Five; *First, Second, Third, Fourth, and Fifth*.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Nouns of the Neuter Gender have the Nominative, Accufative and Vocative alike in both Numbers: And thefe Cafes in the Plural end always in *a*.

2. The Vocative for the moft part in the Singular, [and] always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.

3. Dativus

Part II. Chap. I. of Noun. 5

3. Dativus & Ablativus Pluralis sunt similes.

3. *The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.*

4. Nomina propria plerumque carent Plurali.

4. *Proper Names for the most part want the Plural.*

A **NOUN** is that Part of Speech which signifies the Name or Quality of a Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; *Bonus*, good.

A Noun is either *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

A *Substantive Noun* is, That which signifies the Name of a Thing; as, *Arbor*, a Tree; *Virtus*, Virtue; *Bonitas*, Goodness.

An *Adjective Noun* is, That which signifies an Accident, Quality, or Property of a Thing; as, *Albus*, white; *Felix*, happy; *Gravis*, heavy.

A Substantive may be distinguished from an Adjective these two ways :

1. A Substantive can stand in a Sentence without an Adjective, but an Adjective cannot without a Substantive; as, I can say, *A Stone falls*, but I cannot say *Heavy falls*. 2. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Adjective, it will make Sense, but if it be joined with a Substantive, it will make Nonsense: Thus we say, *A good Thing*, *a white Thing*; but we do not say, *A Man Thing*, *a Beast Thing*.

A Substantive Noun is divided into *Proper* and *Appellative*.

A *Proper Substantive* is, That which agrees to one particular Thing of a Kind; as, *Virgilius*, a Man's Name; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name; *Scotia*, Scotland; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh; *Taus*, the Tay.

An *Appellative Substantive* is, That which is common to a whole Kind of Things; as, *Vir*, a Man; *Fœmina*, a Woman; *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Urbs*, a City; *Fluvius*, a River.

NOTE, That when a proper Name is applied to many, it becomes an Appellative, as *duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

GENDER in a natural Sense is the Distinction of Sex, or the Difference between Male and Female; but in a Grammatical Sense, we commonly understand by it the Fitness that a *Substantive Noun* hath to be joined to an *Adjective* of such a *Termination*, and not of another. Therefore,

Of Names of Animals, the *Hees* are of the Masculine, and the *Shees* of the Feminine Gender: But of Things without Life, and where the Diversity of Sex is not considered, even of Things that have Life, some are of the Masculine, others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gender, according to the Use of the best Authors of the *Latin Tongue*.

Besides these three principal Genders there are reckoned also other three less principal, which are nothing else but Compounds of the three former, viz. the Gender *Common to two*, the Gender *Common to three*, and the *Doubtful Gender*.

I. The *Common Gender*, or Gender common to two, [*Genus commune* or *Commune duum*] is Masculine and Feminine; and belongs to such Nouns as agree to both Sexes; as, *Parent*, a Father or Mother; *Bos*, an Ox or Cow.

II. The *Gender Common to three* [*Genus commune trium*] is Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter, and belongs only to Adjectives. Whereof some have three Terminations, the first Masculine, the second Feminine, and the third Neuter; as, *Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good. Some have two, the first Masculine and Feminine, and the second Neuter; as *Mollis*, *molle*, soft. And

And some have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three Genders; as *Prudens*, wife.

III. The *Doubtful Gender* [*Genus dubium*] belongs to such Nouns as are found in good Authors, sometimes in one Gender, and sometimes in another; as *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. *Vulgus*, the Rabble, Masc. or Neut.

[We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the *Epicene* or *Promiscuous Gender*; for, properly speaking, there is no such Gender distinct from the three chief ones, or the doubtful. There are indeed *Epicene Nouns*, that is, some Names of Animals, in which the Distinction of Sex is either not at all, or very obscurely considered; and these are generally of the Gender of their Termination, as, *Aquila*, an Eagle, Femin. because it ends in *a*; *Passer*, a Sparrow, Mascul. because it ends in *er*. (See p. 8. and 11.) So *Homo*, a Man or Woman, Masc. *Mancipium*, a Slave, Neut. *Anguis*, a Serpent, Doubtful.]

To distinguish these Genders, we make use of these three Words, *Hic*, *hec*, *hoc*, which are commonly, though improperly, called *Articles*. *Hic* is the Sign of the Masc. *hec* of the Fem. *hoc* of the Neut. Gender; *Hic* & *hec* of the Common to two; *Hic*, *hec*, *hoc*, of the Common to three; *hic aut hec*; *hic aut hoc*, &c. of the doubtful.

By *CASES* we understand the different Terminations that Nouns receive in declining: So called from *Cado* to fall, because they naturally fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *Casus rectus*, the straight Case; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The *Singular NUMBER* denotes one single Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; the *Plural* denotes more Things than one; as, *Homines*, Men.

¶ Before the Learner proceeds to the Declension of Latin Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general View of

The Declension of English Nouns.

I. The *English Language* hath the two Genders of Nature, viz. Masculine and Feminine; for Animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE*, according to the Difference of their Sex: And almost every Thing without Life is called *IT*. But because all the Adjectives of this Language are of one Termination, it has no Occasion for any other Genders.

II. The *English*, properly speaking, has no Cases, because there is no Alteration made in the Words themselves, as in the Latin; but instead thereof we use some little Words called *PARTICLES*.

Thus, the *Nominative Case* is the simple Noun itself: The Particle *OF* put before it, or *'s* after it makes the *Genitive*: *TO* or *FOR* before it makes the *Dative*: The *Accusative* is the same with the *Nominative*: The *Vocative* hath *O* before it: And the *Ablative* hath *WITH*, *FROM*, *IN*, *BY*, &c.

NOTE 1. That when a Substantive comes before a Verb, it is called the Nominative; when it follows after a Verb active, without a Preposition intervening, it is called the Accusative.

NOTE 2. That the Apostrophus or Sign [*'*] is not used in the Genitive Plural; as, *Mens Works*, the *Apostles Creed*.

NOTE 3. That *TO* the Sign of the Dative, and *O* of the Vocative, are frequently omitted or understood.

Besides these there are other two little Words called *ARTICLES*, which are

are com
el or H
A or
Men, with T
No
and Ap
Article
But pro
the Tha
No
wants t
No
Article
nite is
The just
III.
commo
Exc.
Singular
noticed
Singular
ge, se,
from th
so that
the Ad
these T
Singular
Exc.
Calves;
Grief, I
Exc.
Child, C
seldom
Exc.
Lice; G
and Swi
Exc
Cbicken,
NOT
rather is

Singular. { No
Ge
Da
Acc
Vo
[Ab

are commonly put before Substantive Nouns, viz. *A* [or *An* before a Vowel or *H*] called the *Indefinite Article*, and *THE* called the *Definite*.

A or *An* signifies as much as the Adjective *One*, and is put for it; as, *A Man*, that is *One Man*. *The* is a Pronoun, and signifies almost the same with *This* or *That*, and *These* or *Those*.

NOTE 1. That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms, and Appellatives, when used in a very general Sense, have none of these Articles; as, *Man is mortal*, i. e. every man; *God abhors Sin*, i. e. all Sins: But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, &c. frequently have *The*; as *the Thames*, *the Britannia*, *the Alps*.

NOTE 2. That the Vocative has none of these Articles, and the Plural wants the Indefinite.

NOTE 3. That when an Adjective is joined with a Substantive, the Article is put before both; as, *A good Man*, *The good Man*: And the Definite is put before the Adjective when the Substantive is understood; as, *The just shall live by Faith*, i. e. *The just Man*.

III. The *English* hath two Numbers, as the *Latin*, and the Plural is commonly made by putting an *s* to the Singular; as, *Book*, *Books*.

Exc. 1. Such as end in *ch*, *sh*, *ff*, and *x*, which have *es* added to their Singular; as, *Church-es*, *Brush-es*, *Witness-es*, *Box-es*. Where it is to be noticed that such Words have a Syllable more in the Plural than in the Singular Number. Which likewise happens to all Words ending in *ce*, *ge*, *se*, *ze*; as *Faces*, *Ages*, *Houses*, *Mazes*. The Reason of this proceeds from the near Approach these Terminations have in their Sound to an *s*, so that their Plural could not be distinguished from the Singular without the Addition of another Syllable. And, for the same Reason, Verbs of these Terminations have a Syllable added to them in their third Person Singular of the Present Tense.

Exc. 2. Words that end in *f*, or *fe*, have their Plural in *ves*; as, *Calf*, *Calves*; *Leaf*, *Leaves*; *Wife*, *Wives*: But not always; for *Hoof*, *Roof*, *Grief*, *Mischief*, *Dwarf*, *Strife*, *Muff*, &c. retain *f*. *Staff* has *Staves*.

Exc. 3. Some have their Plural in *en*; as, *Man*, *Men*; *Woman*, *Women*; *Child*, *Children*; *Chick*, *Chickens*; *Brother*, *Brothers* or *Brethren* (which last is seldom used but in Sermons, or in a Burlesque Sense.)

Exc. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *Die*, *Dice*; *Mouse*, *Mice*; *Louse*, *Lice*; *Goose*, *Geese*; *Foot*, *Feet*; *Tooth*, *Teeth*; *Penny*, *Pence*; *Sow*, *Sows*, and *Swine*; *Cow*, *Cows*, and *Kine*.

Exc. 5. Some are the same in both Numbers; as, *Sheep*, *Hose*, *Swine*, *Chicken*, *Pease*, *Deer*; *Fish* and *Fishes*; *Mile* and *Miles*; *Horse* and *Horses*.

NOTE. That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have rather *ies* than *ys* in the Plural; as, *Cherry*, *Cherries*.

An *English Noun* is thus declined.

A, The, The,

Singular.	Nom.	King,	Plural.	Nom.	Kings,
	Gen. of	King,		Gen. of	Kings,
	Dat. to [for]	King,		Dat. to [for]	Kings,
	Acc.	King,		Acc.	Kings,
	Voc. O	King,		Voc. O	Kings,
	Abl. with, from, in, by	King:		Abl. with, from, in, by	Kings.
					Prima

Prima Declinatio..

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur
Prima Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum singularem in æ Diphthongon.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Quatuor; a, e, as, es; ut,

Penna, Penelope, Æneas, Anchises.

Penna, a Pen, Fem.

Sing.

Nom. penna, a pen,

Gen. pennæ, of a pen,

Dat. pennæ, to a pen,

Acc. pennam, a pen,

Voc. penna, O pen,

Abl. penna, with a pen.

The First Declension.

M. **H**OW is the First Declension known?

S. By the Genitive and Dative singular in æ Diphthong.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. Four; a, e, as, es; as,

Plur.

Terminations.

Nom. pennæ, pens. a, æ,

Gen. pennarum, of pens. æ, arum,

Dat. pennis, to pens. æ, is,

Acc. pennas, pens. am, as,

Voc. pennæ, O pens. a, æ,

Abl. pennis, with pens. a, is.

¶ After the same Manner you may decline *Litera* a Letter; *Via*, a way; *Galea* an Helmet; *Tunica*, a Coat; *Toga* a Gown.

A is a Latin Termination, *e*, *as*, and *es*, are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine, in *as* and *es* Masculine.

RULE, *Filia*, a Daughter; *Nata*, a Daughter; *Dea*, a Goddess; *Anima*, the Soul, with some others, have more frequently *abus* than *is* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur. to distinguish them from Masculines in *us* of the second Declension.

¶ In declining Greek Nouns observe the following Rules.

1. Greek Nouns in *as* [and *a*] have sometimes their Accusative [with the Poets] in *an*; as, *Æneas*, *Æneam*, vel *Ænean*; [*Offa*, *Offam*, vel *Offan*.]

2. These in *es* have their Accusative in *en*, and their Vocative and Ablative in *e*, as,

Nom. Anchises,

Voc. Anchise,

Acc. Anchisen,

Abl. Anchise.

3. Nouns in *e* have their Genitive in *es*, their Accusative in *en*, their Dative, Vocative, and Ablative, in *e*; as,

Nom. Penelope,

Dat. Penelope,

Voc. Penelope,

Abl. Penelope.

Gen. Penelopes,

Acc. Penelopen,

[As to the Dative of Words in *e*, I have followed Probus and Priscian, among the Ancients; Lilly, Alvarus, Vossius, Messieurs de Port Royal, Johnson, &c. among the Moderns. And though none of them cite any Example, yet I remember to have observed three such Datives, viz. *Cybele* in Virg. *Æn.* XI.

768. Penelope in Martial, Epig XI. 8, 9. and Epigone in Reinesii Syntag. Inscript. Class. 14. Num. 85. But Diomedes and Despauter seem to be of Opinion, that these Nouns have æ in their Dative. The Reason that moved the former is, because they thought it incongruous, that seeing Nouns in e generally follow the Greek in all their other Cases, they should follow the Latin in their Dative only, especially since their Ablative, which answers to the Greek Dative, ends in e. As on the contrary, they maintain, that if such Nouns have æ in their Dative, it must come from a Nominative in a; of which there are some Examples yet extant: And then they may likewise have their Accusative in am; as, Penelopam, Circam, in Plautus, Lycambam in Terentianus Maurus. Thus Helenæ or Helenes, Helenam or Helenen, are frequently to be met with in Poets; who also turn such Words as commonly end in a, into e in the Nominative and Vocative, when the Measure of their Verse requires it. And here it may not be improper to remark, that even Greek Words in es have sometimes their Nominative and Vocative in a, (whence comes their Genitive and Dative in æ:) And, if Mr Johnson's Citations are right, both es and e have sometimes their Accusative in em.]

Secunda Declinatio.

M. Q Uomodo dignoscitur Secunda Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singularem in i, & Dativum in o.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Septem; er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on; ut,

Gener, a Son-in-law; Vir, a Man; Satur, full; Dominus, a Lord; Regnum, a Kingdom; Synodus, a Synod; Albion, the Island Albion, or Great Britain.

Gener, a Son-in-law, Masc.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	gener,	generi,
Gen.	generi,	generorum,
Dat.	genero,	generis,
Acc.	generum,	generos,
Voc.	gener,	generi,
Abl.	genero:	generis.

Terminations.

er, ir, ur, i,
i, orum,
o, is,
um, os,
er, ir, e, i,
o: is.

After the same Manner you may decline Puer, a Boy; Socr, a Father-in-law; Vir, a Man, &c. But Liber, a Book; Magister, a Master; Alexander, a Man's Name; and most other Substantives in er, lose the e before r; Thus, Sing. Nom. Liber, Gen. libri, Dat. libro, Acc. librum, Voc. liber, Abl. libro: Plur. Nom. libri, Gen. librorum, &c.

Dominus, a Lord, Masc.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. dominus,

Nom. domini,

Gen. domini,

Gen. dominorum,

Dat. domino,

Dat. dominis,

Acc. dominum,

Acc. dominos,

Voc. domine,

Voc. domini,

Abl. domino;

Abl. dominis.

Thus,

Ventus, the Wind.

Oculus, the Eye.

Fluvius, a River.

Puteus, a Well.

Focus, a common Fire.

Rogus, a funeral Pile.

Regnum, a Kingdom, Neut.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. regnum,

Nom. regna,

Gen. regni,

Gen. regnorum,

Dat. regno,

Dat. regnis,

Acc. regnum,

Acc. regna,

Voc. regnum,

Voc. regna,

Abl. regno;

Abl. regnis.

Thus,

Templum, a Church.

Ingenium, Wit.

Horreum, a Barn.

Canticum, a Song.

Jugum, a Yoke.

R E G U L Æ.

I. Nominativus in *us* facit Vocativum in *e*; ut, *Ventus, vente.*

II. Propria in *ius* perdunt *us* in Vocativo; ut *Georgius, Georgi.*

Filius hath also *fili*, and *Deus* hath *Deus* in the Vocative, and in the Plural more frequently *Dii* and *Diis*, than *Dei* and *Deis*.

R U L E S.

I. The Nominative in *us* makes the Vocative in *e*; as, *Ventus, vente.*

II. Proper Names in *ius* lose *us* in the Vocative; as, *Georgius, Georgi.*

The most common Terminations of the Second Declension are *er* and *us* of the Masc. and *um* of the Neut. Gender.

There is only one Noun in *ir* of this Declension, viz. *Vir*, a Man, with its Compounds, *Levir*, *Duumvir*, *Triumvir*, &c. and only one in *ur*, viz. *Satur*, full, (of old *Saturus*) an Adjective. *Os* and *on* are Greek Terminations, and generally changed into *us* and *um* in their Nominative. These, with other Greek Nouns in *us*, have sometimes their Acc. in *on*.

[We have excluded the Termination *eus* from this Declension, as belonging more properly to the Third; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*, *Orphei*, *Orpheu*, *Orpheu*: For when it is of the Second Declension, it is *e-us*, of two Syllables, and so falls under the Termination *us*; *Orphe-us*, *Orphe-i* (contracted *Orphei* and *Orphi*) *Orphe-o*, *Orphe-um*, (or *Orphe-on*) *Orphe-o*.]

Tertia Declinatio.

M. Q Uomodo dignoscitur Tertia Declinatio?

The Third Declension

M. H OW is the Third Declension known?

D. Pe

Part II. Chap. I. of Noun.

II

D. Per Genitivum singularem in *is*, & Dativum in *i*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes seu Syllabas finales?

D. Septuaginta & unam.

M. Quot habet literas finales?

D. Undecim; *a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*; ut,

Diadema, a Crown; *Sedile*, a Seat; *Sermo*, a Speech; *Lac*, Milk; *David*, a Man's Name; *Animal*, a living Creature; *Pecten*, a Comb; *Pater*, a Father; *Rupes*, a Rock; *Caput*, the Head; *Rex*, a King.

Sermo, Speech, Masc.

Sing.

Plur.

Terminations.

<i>Nom.</i> sermo,	<i>Nom.</i> sermones,	<i>a, e, o, &c.</i>	<i>es, a,</i>
<i>Gen.</i> sermonis,	<i>Gen.</i> sermonum,	<i>is,</i>	<i>um, ium.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> sermoni,	<i>Dat.</i> sermonibus,	<i>i,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> sermonem,	<i>Acc.</i> sermones,	<i>em,</i>	<i>es, a,</i>
<i>Voc.</i> sermo,	<i>Voc.</i> sermones,	<i>a, e, o, &c.</i>	<i>es, a,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> fermone :	<i>Abl.</i> sermonibus.	<i>e, i :</i>	<i>ibus.</i>

Sedile, a Seat, Neut.

Sing.

Plur.

<i>Nom.</i> sedile,	<i>Nom.</i> sedilia,
<i>Gen.</i> sedilis,	<i>Gen.</i> sedilium.
<i>Dat.</i> sedili,	<i>Dat.</i> sedilibus,
<i>Acc.</i> sedile,	<i>Acc.</i> sedilia,
<i>Voc.</i> sedile,	<i>Voc.</i> sedilia,
<i>Abl.</i> sedili.	<i>Abl.</i> sedilibus.

As Sermo, so most Substantives of this Declension in a, o, c, d, n, t, x, er, or, ur, as, os, us; (except their Acc. and Voc. when they are Neuter, or when they want the Plural Number.) Also (when they have more Syllables in their Gen. than Nom.) all Words in es, and most of those in is.

Of the final Letters of the third Declension six are peculiar to it, *a, c, d, l, t, x*; the other five are common to other Declensions, viz. *a, e, n, r, s*.

The copious final Letters are, *a, n, r, s, x*.

The copious final Syllables are, *io, do, go, en, er, or, as, et, is, os, us, ns, rs, ex*.

All Nouns in *a* of this Declension are originally Greek, and have always an *m* before it. There are only two Words in *c*; *Lac*, Milk; and *Halec*, a Herring. Words in *d* are proper Names of Men, and very rare. There are only three Words in *t*, viz. *Caput*, the Head; *Sinciput*, the Forehead; *Occiput*, the Hind-head.

1. The Terminations *er, or, os, o, on,*

2. The Terminations, *io, do, go, as, es, is, ys, aus, x,* and *s* after a Consonant,

3. The Terminations *a, c, e, l, men, ar, ur; us, ut,*

But from these there are many Exceptions.

} are { Masculine,
Feminine,
Neuter.

12. Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, 1. That for the most part the Genitive hath a Syllable more than the Nominative; and where it is otherwise they generally end in *e*, *es* or *is*.

NOTE, 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* in the Gen. must run through the other Cases (except the Acc. and Voc. Sing. of Neuters); as, *Thema*, -*atis*, -*ati*, -*ate*, a Theme: *Sanguis*, -*guinis*, Blood; *Iter*, -*itineris*, a Journey: *Carmen*, -*minis*, a Verse; *Judex*, -*dicis*, a Judge.

REGULÆ.

1. Nomina in *e*, & Neutra in *al* & *ar*, habent *i* in Ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantum in Ablativo, faciunt Genitivum pluralem in *um*.

3. Quæ habent *i* tantum, vel *e* aut *i* simul, faciunt *ium*.

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in Ablativo singulari, habent *a* in Nominativo, Accusativo, & Vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in Ablativo, faciunt *ia*.

RULES.

1. Nouns in *e*, and Neuters in *al* and *ar*, have *i* in the Ablative.

2. These which have *e* only in the Ablative, make their Genitive plural in *um*.

3. These which have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make *ium*.

4. Neuters which have *e* in their Ablative sing. have *a* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural.

5. But these which have *i* in the Ablative, make *ia*.

1. EXCEPTIONS in the Accusative singular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accusative; as *Vīs*, *vim*, Strength; *Tussis*, the Cough; *Sitis*, Thirst; *Buris*, the Beam of a Plough; *Ravis*, Hoarseness; *Amussis*, a Mason's Rule. To which add Names of Rivers in *is*; as, *Tybris*, *Thamesis*, which the Poets sometimes make in *in*.

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im*; as, *Navis*, a Ship; *Puppis*, the Stern; *Securis*, an Ax; *Clavis*, a Key; *Febris*, a Fever; *Pelvis*, a Basin; *Restis*, a Rope; *Turris*, a Tower; *Navem* vel *navim*, &c.

2. EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative singular.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the Accusative have *i* in the Ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*, &c. These that have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i*; as, *Navis*, *navem* vel *navim*, *nave* vel *navi*.

2. *Canalis*, *Vestis*, *Bipennis*, have *i*: *Avis*, *Amnis*, *Ignis*, *Unguis*, *Rus*, and *Imber*, with some others, have *e* or *i*; but most commonly *e*.

These Neuters in *ar* have *e*; *Far*, *Jubar*, *Nectar*, and *Hepar*: *Sal* also has *sale*.

3. EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as*, *is*, and *s* with a Consonant before it, have *ium*; as, *As*, *assium*; *Lis*, *litium*; *Urbs*, *urbium*.

2. Also Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in their Genitive; as *Vallis*, *vallium*; *Rupes*, *rupium*. Except, *Panis*, *Canis*, *Vates*, and *Volucris*.

3. To which add *Caro*, *Cor*, *Cos*, *Dos*, *Mus*, *Nix*, *Nox*, *Linter*, *Sal*, *Os* *offis*.

NOTE, That when the Genitive Plural ends in *ium*, the Accusative frequently, instead of *es*, has *eis* or *is*; as, *omneis*, *parteis*, or *omnis*, *partis*, for *cunnes*, *partes*.

Of Greek Nouns.

I. Greek Nouns have sometimes their Genitive in *os*. And these are,
1. Such as increase their Genitive with *d*; as, *Arcas*, *Arcadis* vel *Arcados*, an Arcadian; *Briseis*, *-eids* vel *-eidos*, a Woman's Name. 2. Such as increase in *os* pure, i. e. with a vowel before it: *Herefis*, *-eos*, vel *-ias*, an Heresy. To these add *Sphyngos*, *Strymonos*, and *Panos*.

NOTE, That *is* is more frequent, except in the second Kind, and Patronymics of the first.

II. 1. Greek Words which increase their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, (i. e. with a Consonant before it) have frequently their Accusative sing. in *a*, and plur in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, *lampada*, *lampadas*; also *Minos*, *Minois*, *Minoa*; *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troa*, *Troas*; *Heros*, *herois*, *heroa*, *heroas*.

2. Words in *is* or *ys*, whose Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Accusative in *in* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, *Herefis*, *eos*, *herefim* or *-in*, *Chelys*, *-lyos*, a Lute; *ch lym* or *-lyn*. Of Words in *is*, which have their Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, *Masculines* have their Accusative for the most part in *im* or *in*, seldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of: as, *Paris*, *Parim* vel *Parin*, vel *Paridem*; *Feminines* have most commonly *dem* or *da*, and seldom *im* or *in*; as, *Briseis*, *Briseidem*, vel *Briseida*.

III. *Feminines* in *o* have *us* in their Genitive, and *o* in their other Cases; as, *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, *Didonis*, *Didoui*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin Original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their Vocative; as *Calchas*, *Achilles*, *Paris*, *Tiphys*, *Orpheus*; *Calcha*, *Achille*, *Pari*, *Typhy*, *Orphen*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um*, (and sometimes *on* in their Genitive Plural; as, *Epigrammaton* *Herefeon*) and very early in *ium*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have most frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative Plural; as, *Poema*, *Poematis*, because of old they said *Poematum*, *ti*. *Bos* has *Borum*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur Quarta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singularrem in *us*, & Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Duas; *us* & *u*; *ut*,

Fructus, *Fruit*; *Cornu*, a Horn.

Fructus, *Fruit*, Masc.

Sing.
 { *Nom.* *fructus*,
 { *Gen.* *fructus*,
 { *Dat.* *fructui*,
 { *Acc.* *fructum*,
 { *Voc.* *fructus*,
 { *Abl.* *fructu*:

Plur.

{ *Nom.* *fructus*,
 { *Gen.* *fructuum*,
 { *Dat.* *fructibus*,
 { *Acc.* *fructus*,
 { *Voc.* *fructus*,
 { *Abl.* *fructibus*.

The Fourth Declension.

M. **H**ow is the Fourth Declension known?

S. By the Genitive Singular in *us*, and the Dative in *ui*.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. Two; *us* and *u*; as,

Terminations.

{ *us*, *us*,
 { *ui*, *uum*,
 { *ui*, *ibus*,
 { *uum*, *us*,
 { *us*, *us*,
 { *u*: *ibus*.

Cornu,

Cornu, a Horn, Neut.

Sing.	Nom. cornu,	Plur.	Nom. cornua,	As Fructus, so Vul-
	Gen. cornu,		Gen. cornuum,	tus, the Countenance; Ma-
	Dat. cornu,		Dat. cornibus,	nus, the Hand, Fem. Ca-
	Acc. cornu,		Acc. cornua,	sus, a Fall or Chance.
	Voc. cornu,		Voc. cornua,	As Cornu, so Genu,
	Abl. cornu:		Abl. cornibus.	the Knee; Veru, a Spit ; Tonitru, Thunder.

Nouns in *us* of this Declension are generally Masculine, and these in *u* all Neuter, and indeclinable in the singular Number.

RULE, Some Nouns have *ubus* in their Dative and Ablative plural, viz. *Arcus*, a Bow; *Artus*, a joint; *Lacus*, a Lake; *Acus*, a Needle; *Portus*, a Fort or Harbour; *Partus*, a Birth; *Tribus*, a Tribe; *Veru*, a Spit.

NOTE, That of old, Nouns of this Declension belonged to the Third, and were declined as *Grus*, *gruis*, a Crane; thus, *Fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructue*: *Fructus*, *fructuum*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructuibus*. So that all the Cases are contracted, except the Dative sing. and Genitive plur. There are some Examples of the Genitive in *uis* yet extant; as, on the contrary, there are several of the Dative in *u*.

The blessed Name *IESUS* is thus declined,

Domus, an House, Fem. is thus declined :

Sing.	Nom. IESUS,	Plur. <i>Quintum</i>	Nom. domus,	Nom. domus,
	Gen. IESU,		Gen. domus, v.-mi,	Gen. domorum, v. -uum,
	Dat. IESU,		Dat. domui, v.-mo,	Dat. domibus,
	Acc. IESU M,		Acc. domum,	Acc. domos, v. -us,
	Voc. IESU,		Voc. domus,	Voc. domus,
	Abl. IESU,		Abl. domo:	Abl. domibus.

[NOTE, That the Genitive *domi* is only used when it signifies, At home; *domo* the Dative is found in Horace, *Epist.* I. 10, 13.]

Quinta Declinatio.

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur Quinta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum singularem in *ei*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Unam, nempe, *es*; ut, *Res*, a Thing, Fem.

Sing.	Nom. res,	Plur.	Nom. res,
	Gen. rei,		Gen. rerum,
	Dat. rei,		Dat. rebus,
	Acc. rem,		Acc. res,
	Voc. res,		Voc. res,
	Abl. re:		Abl. rebus.

The Fifth Declension.

M. **H**ow is the Fifth Declension known?

S. By the Genitive and Dative singular in *ei*.

M. How many Terminations bath it?

S. One, namely, *es*; as, Terminations.

<i>es</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>ei</i> ,	<i>erum</i> ,
<i>ei</i> ,	<i>ebus</i> ,
<i>em</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>es</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>e</i> :	<i>ebus</i> .

Nouns

Nouns of the Fifth Declension are not above fifty, and all are Feminine, except *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon, Masc.

All Nouns of this Declension end in *ies*, except three, *Fides*, Faith; *Spes*, Hope; *Res*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies* are of the Fifth, except these four; *Abies*, a Fir-tree; *Aries*, a Ram; *Paries*, a Wall; and *Quies*, Rest; which are of the Third.

Most Nouns of this Declension want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural, and many of them want the plural altogether.

General Remarks on all the Declensions.

1. The Genitive Plural of the first four is sometimes contracted, especially by Poets; as, *Cœlicolum*, *Deum*, *Mensum*, *Curram*; for *Cœlicolarum*, *Deorum*, *Mensium*, *Currum*.

2. When the Genitive of the Second ends in *ii*, the last *i* is sometimes taken away by Poets; as, *Tuguri* for *Tugurii*. We read also *Aulai* for *Aulæ* in the First, and *Fide* for *fidei* in the Fifth; and so of other like Words.

Declinatio Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva sunt vel primæ & secundæ Declinationis, vel tertiæ tantum.

Omnia Adjectiva habentia tres Terminationes (præter (a) undecim) sunt primæ & secundæ: At quæ unam vel duas Terminationes habent, sunt tertiæ.

Adjectiva primæ & secundæ habent Masculinum in *us*, (b) vel *er*; Fœmininum semper in *a*, Neutrum semper in *um*;

bonus, bona, bonum, good; *Tener, tenera, tenerum*, tender.

Bonus, bona, bonum, good.

Sing.

Plur.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bon-us,</i>	<i>-a,</i>	<i>-um,</i>	<i>Nom. boni,</i>	<i>-æ,</i>	<i>-a,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bon-i,</i>	<i>-æ,</i>	<i>-i,</i>	<i>Gen. bon-orum,</i>	<i>-arum,</i>	<i>-orum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bon-o,</i>	<i>-æ,</i>	<i>-o,</i>	<i>Dat. bon-is,</i>	<i>-is,</i>	<i>-is,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bon-um,</i>	<i>-am,</i>	<i>-um,</i>	<i>Acc. bon-os,</i>	<i>-as,</i>	<i>-a,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bon-e,</i>	<i>-a,</i>	<i>-um,</i>	<i>Voc. boni,</i>	<i>-æ,</i>	<i>-a,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bon-o,</i>	<i>-a,</i>	<i>-o:</i>	<i>Abl. bon-is,</i>	<i>-is,</i>	<i>-is,</i>

(a) Viz. *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *celeber*, *saluber*, *volucer*, *campester*, *equester*, *paluster*, *silvester*; which are of the Third, and have their Masculine in *er* or *is*, their Feminine in *is*, and Neuter in *e*.

(b) For *satur*, full, was of old, *saturus*.

Tener,

Tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender.*

Sing.

Plur.

N. tener,	-era, -erum,	N. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
G. ten-eri,	-eræ, -eri,	G. ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ, -ero,	D. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram, -erum,	A. ten-erós,	-eras,	-era,
V. tener,	-era, -erum,	V. teneri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-era, -ero:	A. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

Adjectives are declined as three Substantives of the same Terminations and Declensions: As in the Examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus*; *tener*, like *gener*; *bona* and *tenera*, like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. Therefore the Ancients, as is clear from *Varro*, lib. 3. de *Anal.* declined every Gender separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this Method at first, especially if the Boy is of a slow Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er*, some retain *e*, as *tener*. So *miser*, -era, -erum, wretched: *liber*, -era, -erum, free; and all Compounds in *ger* and *fer*. Others lose it; as, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulebrum*, fair; *niger*, -gra, -grum, black.

These following Adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *solus*, alone; *ul- lus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether, with its Compounds; *uterque*, both; *uterlibet*, *utervis*, which of the two you please; *alteruter*, the one or the other; have their Genitive singular in *ius*, and Dative in *i*.

Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis.

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

1. Unius Terminationis.

1. Of one Termination.

Felix, happy.

Sing.

Plur.

N. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	N. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	G. fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	A. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. felix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices,	-ici
A. fel-ice, vel	-ici, &c.		A. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus

2. Duarum Terminationum.

2. Of two Terminations

Mitis, mite, meek.

Sing.

Plur.

N. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	N. mites,	mites,	miti
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	G. mitium,	mitium,	miti
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	D. mitibus,	mitibus,	miti
A. mitem,	mitem,	mite,	A. mites,	mites,	miti
V. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	V. mites,	mites,	mitia,
A. miti,	miti,	miti:	A. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus

Miti

Mitior, mitius, meeker.

Sing.

Plur.

N. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	N. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
G. miti-oris,	-oris,	-oris,	G. miti-orum,	-orum,	-orum,
D. miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	D. miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus,
A. miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	A. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
V. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	V. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
A. miti-ore, vel ori, &c.			A. miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus,

3. Trium Terminationum.

3. Of three Terminations.

Acer vel acris, acris, acre, Sharp.

Sing.

Plur.

N. a-cer vel -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	N. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	G. a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	D. a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	A. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. a-cer vel acris,	-cris,	-cre,	V. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri:	A. a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,

R E G U L Æ.

R U L E S.

1. Adjectiva tertie Declinationis habent e vel i in Ablativo singulari.

1. Adjectives of the Third Declension have e or i in the Ablative singular.

2. At si Neutrum sit in e, Ablativus habet i tantum.

2. But if the Neuter be in e, the Ablative has i only.

3. Genitivus pluralis definit in ium; & neutrum Nominativi, Accusativi, & Vocativi, in ia.

3. The Genitive plural ends in ium; and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative in ia.

4. Excipe Comparativa, quæ a postulant.

4. Except Comparatives, which require um and a.

E X C E P T I O N S.

Dives, Hospes, Sospes, Superstes, Juvenis, Senex, and Pauper, have the Ablative singular, and consequently um in the Genitive plural.

2. Compos, Impos, Confors, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener, and Verber; also compounds ending in ceps, fex, pes, and corpor; as, Principes, Artifex, Bipes, Tricorpor, have um, not ium.

NOTE, That all these have seldom the Neut. sing and never almost Neut. pler. in the Nom. and Acc. To which add Memor, which has memori and memorum; and Locuples, which has locupletium; also, De-refes, Hebes, Perpes, Prapes, Teres, Concolor, Versicolor; which being hardly to be met with in the Genitive plur. 'tis a Doubt whether they should have um or ium, though I incline most to the former.

4. *Par* has *pari*; *vetus*, *vetera* & *veterum*; *Plus* (which hath only the Neut. in the sing.) has *plure*, and *plures*, *plura* (or *pluria*) *plurium*.

NOTE, 1. That Comparatives and Adjectives in *us*, have more frequently *e* than *i*, and Participles in the Ablative called *Absolute* have generally *e*; as, *Carolo regnante*, not *regnanti*.

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives joined with Substantives Neuter, hardly ever have *e* but *i*; as, *vittrici ferro*, not *vittrice*.

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives when they are put substantively, have oft-times *e*; as, *Affinis*, *Familiaris*, *Rivalis*, *Sodalis*, &c. So *Par*, Match; as, *Cum pare quaque suo coeunt*. Ovid.

Of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. **T**HE Ordinal and Multiplicative Numbers (see Chap. IX.) are regularly declined. The Distributive wants the Singular, as also the Cardinal, except *Unus*, which is declined as in p. 16. and hath the Plural, when joined with a Substantive that wanteth the Sing. as *Unæ ter.e*, one Letter; *Una mœnia*, one Wall; or when several particulars are considered complexly, as making one Compound; as, *Uni sex dies*, i. e. One Space of six Days; *Una vestimenta*, i. e. One Suit of Apparel, *Plures*.

Duo and *tres* are declined after this Manner:

Plur.	{	Nom. duo,	duæ, duo,	{	Plur.	Nom. tres, tres, tria,
		Gen. duorum,	duarum, duorum,			Gen. trium, trium, trium,
		Dat. duobus,	duabus, duobus,			Dat. tribus, tribus, tribus,
		Acc. duos vel-o,	duas, duo,			Acc. tres, tres, tria,
		Voc. duo,	duæ, duo,			Voc. tres, tres, tria,
		Abl. duobus,	duabus, duobus,			Abl. tribus, tribus, tribus,

Ambo, Both, is declined as *Duo*.

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille* they are declined thus, *Ducenti*, *ducenti*, *ducenta*; *ducentorum*, *ducentarum*, *ducentorum*, &c.

4. As to *Mille*, *Varro*, and all the Grammarians after him, down to the last Age, make it (when it is put before a Gen. pl.) a Substantive indeclinable in the Sing. and in the Plur. declined, *Millia*, *millium*, *millibus*; but when it hath a Substantive joined to it in any other Case, they make it an Adjective plural indeclinable. But *Scioppius*, and after him *Gronovius*, contend that *Mille* is always an Adjective plural; and, under that Termination, of all Cases and Genders: but that it hath two Neuters, *hec Mille*, and *hec Millia*; that the first is used when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one. And that where it seems to be a Substantive governing a Gen. *Multitudo*, *Numerus*, *Manus*, *Pecunia*, *Pondus*, *Spatium*, *Corpus*, or the like, are understood. I own that formerly was of this Sentiment; but now the weighty Reasons adduced by the more accurate *Perizonius* incline me rather to follow the ancient Grammarians.

After the Declension of Substantives and Adjectives separately, it may not be improper to exercise the Learner with some Examples of a Substantive and Adjective declined together; which will both make him more ready in the Terminations, and render the Dependence of the Adjective upon the Substantive more familiar to him. Let the Examples at first be of the same Terminations and Declensions; as, *Dominus justus*, a just Lord; *Penna bona*, a good Pen; *Infantium eximium*, an Excellent Wit. Afterwards let them be different in one or more; as, *Puer probus*, a good Boy; *Lectio facilis*; an easy Lesson; *Poeta optimus*, an excellent Poet; *Fructus dulcis*, sweet Fruit; *Dies Faustus*, a happy Day, &c. And if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write them either in the School, or at home, to be revised by the Master next Day.

IRREGULAR NOUNS are,

1. DEFECTIVE.

2. VARIABLE.

3. REDUNDANT.

Part II. Chap. I. of Noun.

19

OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.

THESE (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme :

IRREGULAR NOUNS are,

1. DEFECTIVE.

1. Substantives.

Wanting

1. Number.
2. Cases.

Sing as, *Liberi, Mine, Arma.*
 Plur. as, *Aer, Humus, Ævum.*
 Nom. and Voc. } as { *Ditionis.*
 Gen. } Sing { *Chaos.*
 Dat. } { *Plus.*
 Voc. } { *Ego.*
 Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. as, *Mol.*
 Three; as, *Dica, dicam, dicas.*
 Two; as, *Suppetia, Suppetias.*
 One; as, *Dicis, Inficias, Noctū.*
 Masc. as, *Cætera cæterum.*

or having only

Fem. as, *Quisquis, quicquid.*
 Neut. as, *Compos.*
 Masc. and Fem. as, *Plus.*
 Masc. and Neut. as, *Sicelis.*
 Fem. and Neut. as, *Tros.*

2. Adjectives.

Wanting

1. Gender,
2. Number,
3. Case,

Plur. as, *Unusquisque.*
 Sing. as, *Centum.*
 Voc. as, *Nullus.*
 Dat. and Abl. as, *Tantundem.*

or having the - - Voc. only; as, *Masce, Masci.*

2. VARIABLE.

1. Too much.

In Gender, having Sing.

Masc.
 Masc.
 Fem.
 Neut.
 Neut.
 Neut.

and Plur.

In Declension, being of the

Neut. as, *Menalus, Menala.*
 Masc. & Neut. as, *Locus, -ci, and -ca.*
 Neut. as, *Carbasus, Carbasa.*
 Masc. as, *Cælum, cæli.*
 Fem. as, *Epulum, epulæ.*
 Masc. & Neut. as, *Frenum, -ni, & -na.*
 2. and 1. as, *Delicium, delicia.*
 2. and 4. as, *Laurus -ri, and -rus.*
 3. and 2. as, *Vas, -sis; -sa, -forum.*

2. Too little, as, *Indeclinables,*

{ altogether; as, *Fas.*
 { in the Sing. as, *Cornu.*

3. REDUNDANT.

In Termination - - -

{ only; as, *Helena, Helene.*
 { and Gender; as, *Tignus, tignum.*
 { and Decl. as, *Materia, materies.*
 { Gend. and Decl. as, *Æther, æthra.*

In Gender - - - -

only; as, *hic & hoc Vulgus.*

In Declension - - -

{ only; as, *Fames, famis*, of the 3d,
 { Abl. *fame*, of the 5th, because
 { the last Syllable is always long
 { with the Poets,

20 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, 1. That the *Defective* Nouns are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE, 2. That these which *vary too little*, may be ranked under the *Defective*, and these which *vary too much*, under the *Redundant*, E. G. *Cæli, Cælorum*, comes not from *Cælum*, but from *Cælus*; and *Vasa, Vasorum*, not from *Vas*, *Vasis*, but from *Vasum, Vasi*: But Custom, which alone gives Laws to all Languages, has dropt the Singular, and retained the Plural; and so of others.

De Comparatione.

M. QUOT sunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. Tres; *Positivus, Comparativus, & Superlativus*.

M. Quotæ Declinationis sunt hi Gradus?

D. *Positivus* est *Adjectivum Primæ & Secundæ Declinationis, vel Tertiæ tantum*; *Comparativus* est semper *Tertiæ*; *Superlativus* semper *Primæ & Secundæ*.

M. Unde formatur *Comparativus Gradus*?

D. A proximo casu *Positivi* in *i*, addendo pro *Masculino & Fœminino* syllabam *or*, & *us* pro *Neutro*; ut,

Doctus, learned, Gen. *Docti, Doctior, & Doctius*, more learned; *Mitis*, meek, Dat. *miti, mitior, & mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur *Superlativus*?

D. 1. Si *Positivus* desinat in *er*, *Superlativus* formatur addendo *rimus*; ut,

Pulcher, fair, *pulcherrimus*, most fair; *Pauper*, poor, *pau-perrimus*, most poor.

2. Si *Positivus* non desinat in *er*, *Superlativus* formatur à proximo casu in *i*, addendo *simus*; ut,

OF Comparison.

M. HOW many Degrees of Comparison are there?

S. Three; the *Positive, Comparative, and Superlative*.

M. Of what Declension are these Degrees?

S. The *Positive* is an *Adjective of the First and Second Declension, or Third only*; the *Comparative* is always of the *Third*; the *Superlative* always of the *First and Second*.

M. Whence is the *Comparative Degree* formed?

S. From the next Case of the *Positive* in *i*, by adding for the *Masculine and Feminine* the Syllable *or*, and *us* for the *Neuter*; as,

M. Whence is the *Superlative* formed?

S. 1. If the *Positive* ends in *er*, the *Superlative* is formed by adding *rimus*; as,

2. If the *Positive* ends not in *er*, the *Superlative* is formed from the next Case in *i*, by adding *simus*; as,

Gen. *Docti,*

Gen. *Docti, doctissimus*, most learned : Dat. *Miti, mitissimus*, most meek.

By Grammatical COMPARISON we understand three Adjective Nouns, of which the two last are formed from the first, and import Comparison with it, that is, Heightening or Lessening of its Signification.

Consequently these Adjectives only which are capable of having their Signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The POSITIVE signifies the Quality of a Thing simply and absolutely, as, *Durus*, hard; *Parvus*, little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or lessens that Quality, as, *Durior*, harder; *Minor*, less.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or lessens it to a very high or very low Degree; as, *Durissimus*, hardest, or most hard; *Minimus*, very little, or least.

The Positive hath various Terminations; the Comparative ends always in *or* and *us*; the Superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *mum*.

[The Positive, properly speaking, is no Degree of Comparison, for it does not compare Things together: However, it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon and formed from it.]

The SIGN of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *or* added to an Adjective, or the Word *more* put before it.

The SIGN of the Superlative is the Syllable *est* added to an Adjective, or the Words *very* or *most* put before it.

NOTE, That when the Positive is a long Word, or would otherwise sound harsh by having *er* or *est* added to it, we commonly make the Comparative by the Word *more*, and the Superlative by *most* or *very* put before it.

And, for the like Reason, the Latin Comparative is sometimes made by *Magis*, and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime*, put before the Positive. And these are particularly used, when the Positive ends in *us* with a Vowel before it; as, *Pius*, godly; *Arduus*, high; *Idoneus*, fit; tho' not always.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. *Bonus*, *melior*, *optimus*: Good, better, best.
- Malus*, *pejor*, *peffimus*: Evil, worse, worst.
- Magnus*, *major*, *maximus*: Great, greater, greatest.
- Parvus*, *minor*, *minimus*: Little, less, least.

Multus, *plurimus*; *multa*, *plurima*; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*: much, more, most.

2. *Facilis*, easy; *Humilis*, low; *Similis*, like; make their Superlative by changing *is* into *imus*; thus, *facillimus*, *humillimus*, *simillimus*.

3. *Exter*, outward; *Citer*, hither; *Superus*, above; *Inferus*, below; *Posterus*, behind; have regular Comparatives; but their Superlatives are, *extremus* (or *extimus*), uttermost; *citimus*, hithermost; *supremus* (or *summus*), uppermost, highest, last; *infimus* (or *imus*), lowest; *postremus* (or *postumus*), latest or last.

4. Compounds in *Dicus*, *Loquus*, *Ficus*, and *Volus*, have *entior* and *entissimus*; as, *Maledicus*, one that railleth; *Magniloquus*, one that boasteth; *Beneficus*, beneficent; *Malevolus*, malevolent. But these seem rather to come from Participles or Nouns in *ens*. Besides the Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio* are very rare, and Terence has *Mirificissimus*, and Plautus has *Mendacilanguis*.

5. *Prior*, former, has *Primus*, first; *Uterior*, farther, *Ultimus*, farthest, or last; *Propior*, nearer, *Proximus*, nearest, or next; *Ocior*, swifter, *Ocissimus*,

mus, swiftest; their Positives being out of Use, or quite wanting. *Proximus* has also another Comparative formed from it, viz. *Proximior*.

6. There are also a great many other Adjectives capable of having their Signification increased, which yet want one or more of these Degrees of Comparison; as, *Almus*, gracious, without Compar. and Superl. *Ingens*, great, *Ingentior*, greater, without the Superl. *Sacer*, holy, *Sacerrimus*, most holy, without the Compar. *Anterior*, former, without Posit. and Superl.

¶ These three Degrees of Comparison, being nothing else but three distinct Adjectives, may be declined either severally each by itself, or jointly together; Respect still being had to their Declensions. But the first Way is much easier, and will answer all the Purposes of Comparison as well as the other.

C A P. II.

De Pronomine.

M. QUOT sunt Pronomina + simplicia?

D. Octodécim; *Ego, Tu, Sui; Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester; Nostras, Vestras, & Cujas.*

¶ Ex his tria sunt Substantiva, *Ego, Tu, Sui*; reliqua quindecim sunt Adjectiva.

C H A P. II.

Of Pronoun.

M. HOW many + simple Pronouns are there?

S. Eighteen; *Ego, Tu, Sui, Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester; Nostras, Vestras, and Cujas.*

¶ Of these three are Substantives, *Ego, Tu, Sui*; the other fifteen are Adjectives.

Ego, I.

Sing. { *Nom. ego, I,*
Gen. mei, of me,
Dat. mihi, to me,
Acc. me, me,
Voc. —
Abl. me, with me:

Plur. { *Nom. nos, we,*
Gen. nostrum, vel nostri, of us,
Dat. nobis, to us,
Acc. nos, us,
Voc. —
Abl. nobis, with us.

Tu, Thou.

Sing. { *N. tu, thou,*
G. tui, of thee,
D. tibi, to thee,
A. te, thee,
V. tu, O thou,
A. te, with thee:

or you,

Plur. { *N. vos, ye, [you,]*
G. vestrum, vel vestri, of you,
D. vobis, to you,
A. vos, you,
V. vos, O ye, [you,]
A. vobis, with you.

Sy,

Part II. Chap. II. of Pronoun. 23

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.	N. _____	Plur.	N. _____
	G. fui, of himself, &c.		G. fui, of themselves,
	D. tibi, to himself,		D. tibi, to themselves,
	A. se, himself,		A. se, themselves,
	V. _____		V. _____
	A. se, with himself :		A. se, with themselves,

A PRONOUN is an irregular Kind of Noun : Or, it is a Part of Speech which has respect to, and supplies the Place of a Noun ; as, instead of your Name, I say, Tu, Thou or You ; Instead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, I say, *Ille fecit*, He did it, viz. James.

NOTE, 1. That the Dat. *Mibi* is sometimes by the Poets contracted into *Mi*.

NOTE, 2. That of old, the Gen. Plur. of *Ego* was *Nostrorum* and *Noftrarum*; of *Tu*, *Vestrorum* and *Veftrarum* (of which there are several examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*.

NOTE, 3. That we use *Nostrum* and *Vestrum* after Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives, and *Noftri* and *Veftri* after other Nouns, and Verbs ; though there want not some Examples of these last with *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, even in *Cicero* himself, as *Voffius* shews.

Ille, illa, illud ; He, she, that, or it.

Sing.	N. ille, illa, illud,	Plur.	N. illi, illæ, illa,
	G. illius, illius, illius,		G. illorum, illarum, illorum,
	D. illi, illi, illi,		D. illis, illis, illis,
	A. illum, illam, illud,		A. illos, illas, illa,
	V. ille, illa, illud,		V. illi, illæ, illa,
	A. illo, illa, illo :		A. illis, illis, illis.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, he himself, she herself, itself ; and *iste, ista, istud, he, she, that,* are declined as *ille*, save only that *ipse* hath *ipsum* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. Neuter.

Hic, hæc, hoc, This.

Sing.	N. hic, hæc, hoc,	Plur.	N. hi, hæc, hæc,
	G. hujus, hujus, hujus,		G. horum, harum, horum,
	D. huic, huic, huic,		D. his, his, his,
	A. hunc, hanc, hoc,		A. hos, has, hæc,
	V. hic, hæc, hoc,		V. hi, hæc, hæc,
	A. hoc, hac, hoc :		A. his, his, his.

Is, ea, id ; He, she, it, or that.

Sing.	N. is, ea, id,	Plur.	N. ii, eæ, ea,
	G. ejus, ejus, ejus,		G. eorum, earum, eorum,
	D. ei, ei, ei,		D. iis, vel eis,
	A. eum, eam, id,		A. eos, eas, ea,
	V. _____		V. _____
	A. eo, ea, eo ;		A. iis, vel eis.

Quis,

Quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid? *Who, which, what?*
Sing. Plur.

N. quis,	quæ,	quod, <i>vel</i> quid,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis, <i>vel</i> quibus,		
A. quem,	quam,	quod, <i>vel</i> quid,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____			V. _____		

A. quo, qua, quo : A. queis, *vel* quibus.

Qui, quæ, quod ; *Who, which, that.*

Sing.

Plur.

N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis, <i>vel</i> quibus,		
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____			V. _____		

A. quo, qua, quo : A. queis, *vel* quibus.

Meus, my, or mine ; *Tuus*, thy, or thine ; *Suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *Bonus*, -a, -um ; And *Noster*, our or ours ; *Vester*, your or yours, like *Pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the First and Second Declension. But *Tuus*, *Suus* and *Vester*, want the Vocative ; *Noster* and *Meus* have it, in which this last hath *mi*, (and sometimes *meus*) in the Masc. Singular.

Nostras, of our Country ; *Vestras*, of your Country ; *Cujus*, of what or which Country? are declined like *Felix*, of the Third Declension, Gen. *Nostratis*, Dat. *Nostrati*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot call upon or address himself unto, want the Vocative. In consequence of which Rule many Nouns, as, *Nallus*, *Nemo* ; *Qualis*, *Quantus*, *Quot*, &c. and several Pronouns, as, *Ego*, *Sui*, *Quis*, &c. want the Vocative ; but not many, either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which Reason we have given Vocatives to *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Hic*, and *Idem*, therein following the Judgment of the great *Vossius*, *Messieurs de Port Royal*, and *Johnson*, which they support by the following Authorities.

Esto nunc, Sol, testis, & hac mihi terra precanti. Virg. *Æn.* 12.

Tu mihi libertas illa paterna vale. Tibul. lib. 3. *El.* 4.

O nox illa, qua pene aternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti. Cic. pro Flacc.

And the Vocative of *Idem* seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid, Met 15. *—quique fuisti*

Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Virbius esto.

Though all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, viz. *Tuus*, *Meus*, *Noster* and *Nostras*, to have the Vocative.

NOTE, 2. That *Qui* is sometimes used for *Quis*, as, Cic. *Qui tanti fuit labor?* Ter. *Qui erit rumor populi, si id feceris?*

NOTE

Part II. Chap. II. of Pronoun. 25

NOTE 3. That *Quod* with its Compounds, *Aliquod*, *Quodvis*, *Quoddam*, &c. are used when they agree with a Substantive in the same Case; *Quid* with its Compounds *Aliquid*, *Quidvis*, *Quiddam*, &c. either have no Substantive exprest, or govern one in the Genitive: Whence it is that these last are commonly reckoned Substantives. But that *quid* as well as *quod* is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly shews; otherwise we shall make *Multum*, *Plus*, *Tantum*, *Quantum*, &c. also Substantives, when they govern the Genitive; which yet most Grammarians agree to be Adjectives, having the common Word *Negotium* understood.

NOTE 4. That *Qui* the Relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the Ablative, and that (which is remarkable) in all Genders and Numbers, as ME. Johnson evinces by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* and *Terence*; to which he might have added one out of *C. Nepos*, III. 3.

NOTE 5. That *Nostras*, *Vestras*, and *Cujas*, are declined like *Gentile* or *National* Nouns in as of the Third Decl. in Imitation of which they are formed; as, *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Privernas*, a Man, Woman, or Thing, of or belonging to the Towns of *Arpinum*, *Fidena*, or *Privernum*, and may have the Neut. as well as these: (For as *Cic.* has *Iter Arpinas*, and *Liv.* *Bellum Privernas*; so *Colum.* has *Arbustum nostras*, and *Cic.* *Nostratia verba*) contrary to what *Linacer* teaches.

[I pass over taking notice, that in old Authors, especially *Plautus*, we find *quis* and *quisquis* sometimes of the Fem. Gender; *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *tui*; *hice* for *hi*; *hibus*, *ibus*, for *his*, *iis*; *illæ*, *ipsæ*, *istæ*, *quæ*, in the Gen. or Dat. Sing. Fem. *em* for *eum*; *istes* for *istos*; *quouis*, *quoi*, for *cujus*, *cui*, because they are extraordinary.]

Of COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

I. Some are compounded of *Quis* and *Qui*, with some other Word or Syllable. In these *Quis* is sometimes the first and sometimes the last Part of the Word compounded: But *Qui* is always the first.

1. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put first, are, *Quisnam*, who? *Quispiam*, *Quisquam*, any one; *Quisque*, every one; *Quisquis*, whosoever: which are thus declined;

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
<i>Quisnam</i> ,	<i>quænam</i> ,	<i>quodnam</i> ,	<i>vel quidnam</i> ;
<i>cujusnam</i> ,	<i>cuiam</i> .		
<i>Quispiam</i> ,	<i>quæpiam</i> ,	<i>quodpiam</i> ,	<i>vel quidpiam</i> ;
<i>cujuspiam</i> ,	<i>cuipiam</i> .		
<i>Quisquam</i> ,	<i>quæquam</i> ,	<i>quodquam</i> ,	<i>vel quidquam</i> ;
<i>cujusquam</i> ,	<i>cuiquam</i> .		
<i>Quisque</i> ,	<i>quæque</i> ,	<i>quodque</i> ,	<i>vel quidque</i> ;
<i>cujusque</i> ,	<i>cuique</i> .		
<i>Quisquis</i> ,	—	<i>quidquid</i> ,	<i>vel quicquid</i> ;
<i>cujusque</i> ,	<i>cuique</i> .		

And so forth in their other Cases, according to the simple *Quis*. But *Quisquis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nom. and Acc. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Acc. *quenquam*, without the Fem. the Plural is scarcely used.

2. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put last, are, *Aliquis*, some; *Ecquis*, who? To which some add, *Neguis*, *Siquis* and *Numquis*; but these are more frequently read separately, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined,

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
<i>Aliquis</i> ,	<i>aliqua</i> ,	<i>aliquod</i> ,	<i>vel aliquid</i> ,
<i>alicujus</i> ,	<i>alicui</i> .		
<i>Ecquis</i> ,	<i>ecqua</i> ,	<i>vel ecquæ</i> ,	<i>ecquod</i> ,
<i>vel ecquid</i> ,	<i>eccujus</i> ,	<i>eccui</i> .	
<i>Siquis</i> ,	<i>si qua</i> ,	<i>si quod</i> ,	<i>vel si quid</i> ,
<i>si cujus</i> ,	<i>si cui</i> .		
<i>Ne quis</i> ,	<i>ne qua</i> ,	<i>ne quod</i> ,	<i>vel ne quid</i> ,
<i>ne cujus</i> ,	<i>ne cui</i> .		
<i>Num quis</i> ,	<i>num qua</i> ,	<i>num quod</i> ,	<i>vel num quid</i> ,
<i>num cujus</i> ,	<i>num cui</i> .		

NOTE, That these, and only these, have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut.

3 The Compounds of *Qui* are *Quicumque*, whosoever; *Quidam*, some; *Quilibet*, *Quivis*, any one, whom you please; and are thus declined.

Nom.	Gen	Dat.
<i>Quicumque</i> , <i>quæcunque</i> , <i>quodcunque</i> ,	<i>cujuscunque</i> , <i>cuicunque</i> .	
<i>Quidam</i> , <i>quædam</i> , <i>quoddam</i> , <i>vel quiddam</i> ,	<i>cujusdam</i> , <i>cuidam</i> .	
<i>Quilibet</i> , <i>quælibet</i> , <i>quodlibet</i> , <i>vel quidlibet</i> ,	<i>cujuslibet</i> , <i>cuilibet</i> .	
<i>Quivis</i> , <i>quævis</i> , <i>quodvis</i> , <i>vel quidvis</i> ,	<i>cujusvis</i> , <i>cuivis</i> .	

Some of these are twice compounded as, *Ecquisnam*, Who? *Unusquisque*, Every one. The first is scarce declined beyond its Nom. and the second wants the Plur.

NOTE 1. That all these Compounds want the Vocative, except, *Quisque*, *Aliquis* *Quilibet*, *Unusquisque*, and perhaps some others. *Vid. Voss. p. 335*

NOTE 2. That all these Compounds have seldom or never *quæis*, but *quibus*, in their Dat. and Abl. Plur.

NOTE 3. That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, *vel quiddam*, in the Acc. Sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the Gen. Plur. being put instead of *m* for the better Sound, as it is for the same Reason in these Cases of *Idem*

II. Some reckon among Compound Pronouns, *Ego*, *Tu*, and *Sui*, with *Ipse*; but in the best Books they are generally read separately; which seems necessary, because of *te ipse* and *se ipse*, where the two Words are of different Cases.

III. *Is* is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted into *Idem* the same; which is thus declined:

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. <i>Idem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Nom. <i>iidem</i> , <i>eædem</i> , <i>eædem</i> ,	
Gen. <i>eiusdem</i> , <i>eiusdem</i> , <i>eiusdem</i> ,	Gen. <i>eorundem</i> , <i>earundem</i> , <i>eorundem</i> ,	
Dat. <i>eidem</i> , <i>eidem</i> , <i>eidem</i> ,	Dat. <i>eisdem</i> , <i>vel iisdem</i> ,	
Acc. <i>eundem</i> , <i>eandem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Acc. <i>eisdem</i> , <i>eædem</i> , <i>eædem</i> ,	
Voc. <i>idem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Voc. <i>iidem</i> , <i>eædem</i> , <i>eædem</i> ,	
Abl. <i>eodem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>eodem</i> :	Abl. <i>eisdem</i> <i>vel iisdem</i> .	

IV. Most of the other Compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Cases and Genders; as,

1. Of *Iste* and *hic* is compounded, Nom. *Isthic*, *isthac*, *isthoc*, *vel isthi*
Acc. *Isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc*, *vel isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. at

2. Of *Ecce* and *Is* is compounded *Eccum*, *eccam*; Plur. *eccos*, *eccas*: A
from *Ecce* and *Ille*, *Ellum*, *ellam*; *ellos*, *ellas*, in the Accusatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *is*, *hic*, *iste*, and *quis*, are compounded these Genitive
Ejusmodi, *hujusmodi*, *istiusmodi*, *cujusmodi*; and sometimes with the Syllab
ce put in the Middle, *ejustemodi*, *hujuscemodi*, &c.

4. Of *cum* and these Ablatives, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui*, or *quo*, and
bus, are compounded *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quicum*,
quocum, and *quibuscum*

5. To these add some Pronouns compounded with these syllabical A
jections, *met*, *te*, *ce*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their Signification more point
and emphatical, as, *Egomet*, *tute*, *hujusce*, *meapte*, *hiccine*.

REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the Nominative, or *Foregoing State* (as the English Grammar
call it) we use, *I*, *Thou*, *He*, *she*, *We*, *Ye*, *They*, and *Who*: But in the oth
Cases (which they name the *Following State*) we use, *Me*, *Thee*, *Him*,
Us, *You*, *Them*, and *whom*.

2. When we speak of a *Person*, we use *Who* and *Whom*, whether we ask a Question or not; as, *Who did it? The Man who did it.* But if we speak of a *Thing*, with a Question, we use *What?* as, *What Book is that?* Without a Question, we use *Which*; as, *The Book which you gave me.* And then it is frequently understood; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often used, even without a Question, instead of *The Thing which, or That which*; as, *I know what you design, i. e. The Thing which, or that which you design.* As, on the contrary, when it refers to some particular thing mentioned before, we make use of *which*, even with a Question; as, *Give me the Book, Which Book? Which of the Books?*

3. *This* makes in the Plural *These*, and *That* makes *Those*.

NOTE, That *That* is frequently used instead of *Who, Whom, or Which*; as, *The Man that told you; the Man that we saw; the Book that I lent you.*

4. We use *My, Thy, Her, Our, Your, Their*, when they are joined with Substantives, or the Word *Own*; and *Mine, Thine, Hers, Ours, Yours, Theirs*, when the Substantive is left out or understood; as, *My Book, This Book is mine, &c.*

NOTE, That with *own*, or a Substantive beginning with a Vowel, we sometimes use *Mine* and *Thine*; as, *My Eye, or Mine Eye; Thy own, or Thine own*

5. We often use *Here, There, Where*, compounded with these Particles, *Of, By, Upon, About, In With*, instead of *This, That, Which, and What*, with these same Particles; as, *Hereof, Hereby, Hereupon, Hereabouts, Herein, Herewith*; for *Of this, By this, Upon this, About this Place, In this, With this, &c.*

6. *Whose* and *Its* are Genitives, instead of, *Of whom, Of it*; and it is a Fault to use *Its* for *'Tis*, or *it is*, as some do.

C A P. III.

De Verbo.

Quomodo declinatur Verbum?

D. Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros, & Personas.

M. Quot sunt Voces?

D. Duæ; Activa & Passiva.

M. Quot sunt Modi?

D. Quatuor; Indicativus, Subjunctivus, Imperativus, & Infinitivus.

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

D 2

C H A P. III.

Of Verb.

HOW is a Verb declined?

S. By Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

M. How many Voices are there?

S. Two; the Active and Passive.

M. How many Moods are there?

S. Four; Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

M. How many Numbers are there?

D. Duo:

D. Duo ; Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Quot sunt Tempora ?

D. Quinque; Præsens, Præteritum-imperfectum, Præteritum-perfectum, Præteritum-plusquamperfectum, & Futurum.

M. Quot sunt Personæ ?

D. Tres ; Prima, Secunda, Tertia.

S. Two ; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Tenses are there ?

S. Five ; the Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, and the Future.

M. How many Persons are there ?

S. Three ; First, Second Third.

A VERB is a Part of Speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer. Or a Verb is that Part of Speech which expresses what is affirmed or said of Things.

A Verb may be distinguished from any other Part of Speech these two Ways. 1. A Verb being the most necessary and essential Part of a Sentence, without which it cannot subsist ; whatever Word with a Substantive Noun makes full Sense, or a Sentence is a Verb : and that which does not make full Sense with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever Word with He or IT SHALL before it makes Sense, is a Verb, otherwise not.

I. In most Verbs there are two Forms or VOICES, the ACTIVE ending in o, and the PASSIVE in or. The former expresses what is done by the Nominative or Person before it. The latter what is suffered by or done to the Nominative or Person before it ; as, *Amo*, I love ; *Amor*, I am loved.

II. The MOODS are divided into Finite and Infinite. The first three viz. the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative are called FINITE, because they have certain fixed Terminations answering to certain Persons both singular and plural. The last is called INFINITIVE or INFINITE, because it is not confined to one Number or Person more than another.

1. The INDICATIVE Mood affirms or denies positively ; as, *Amo*, I love ; *Non amo*, I do not love : Or else asks a Question ; as, *An amas*, Dost thou love ? *Annon amas ?* dost thou not love ?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood generally depends upon another Verb in the same Sentence, either going before or coming after, as *Si me amas*, *præcepta mea servate*, If ye love me, keep my Commandments.

[This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods, viz. the Optative, the Subjunctive more strictly taken, and the Potential. 1. It is called OPTATIVE, when a Word importing a Wish, as, *Utinam*, *Would to God*, *O si*, *O if*, goes before it. 2. It is named SUBJUNCTIVE, when it is subjoined to some other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives become Indefinites. (See Chap. IX.) 3. It is called POTENTIAL, when with a simple Affirmation of the Verb is also signified some Modification or Affection of it, such as a Power, Possibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, &c. The Signs whereof in our Language are, May, Can, Might, Could, Would, Should, and Have (for Would have or Should have ; as, *They had repented*, for would have repented). But because the Terminations of these Moods are the same, we have comprehended them all under one, viz. the Subjunctive, to which with small Difference

they m
are v
must n
five,
nay, a
As for
signifie
is unde
And it
underst
Fieri p
tend ;

3. T

Love t

4. T

genera

III.

ses are,

1. T

2. T

3. T

The

perfect.

4. T

that the

[viz. th

5. Th

that the

I had w

There

or EXA

Thing a

cum cana

shall rea

of it is S

is only i

ports tha

Time : s

you shall

[And n

into SIM

because it

three Moo

fications o

such as, a

Wish,

tions are

ative, and

Potential

other Ver

they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications wherewith a Verb or Affirmation can be affected, we must multiply them to a far greater Number, and so we shall have a Promissive, Hortative, Precative, Concessive, Mandative, Interrogative Mood; nay, a Volitive and Debitive, which is commonly included in the Potential. As for the Optative, it is plain that the Wish is not in the Verb itself, (which signifies only the Matter of it, or what is wished) but in the Verb Opto, which is understood, with ut, uti, or ut nam, which really signify no more but That. And it is very probable that in like Manner some Verb, or other Word, may also be understood to what is called the Potential Mood, such as Ita est, Res ita est, Fieri potest ut, &c. as, Vossius, Sanctius, Perizonius, and others, do contend; tho' Mr Johnson is of another Opinion.]

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts or intreats, as, *Ama*, Love thou.

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expresses the Signification of the Verb in general, and is Englished by To; as, *Amare*, To love.

III. The TENSES are either Simple or Compound. The SIMPLE Tenses are, the Present, the Preter-perfect, and Future.

1. The PRESENT

2. The PRETER-PERFECT

3. The FUTURE

} Tense speaks of Time now { Present.
Past.
To come,

The COMPOUND Tenses are the Preter-imperfect and the Preter-pluperfect.

4. The PRETER-IMPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was present and unfinished then; as, *Amabam*, I did love [viz. then.]

5. The PRETER-PLUPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was past at or before that Time; as, *Scriptissem epistolam*, I had written a letter, [i. e. before that Time.]

There is also a Compound Future Tense called the FUTURE-PERFECT, or EXACT, which refers to some Time yet to come, and imports that a Thing as yet future shall be past and finished at or before that Time; as, *cum cenavero, tu leges*, when I shall have supped, [i. e. after Supper] you shall read. This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of it is *Shall have*; as the other Future, called the FUTURE-IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports that two things yet future shall be contemporary, or exist at one Time: as, *Cum cenabo tu leges*, When I shall sup, [i. e. in Time of Supper] you shall read.

[And not only the Tenses, but even the MOODS themselves may be divided into SIMPLE and COMPOUND. I call the Indicative a Simple Mood, because it simply affirms something of its Person or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call Compound, because they have some other Ideas or Modifications of our Thoughts superadded to the simple Signification of the Verb; such as, a Command, a Desire, Prohibition, Possibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wish, Concession, Supposition, Condition, Purpose, &c. These Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as, a Command, &c. in the Imperative, and, according to Johnson, Power, Will, Duty, &c. in the Mood called Potential; or closely interwoven with it by the Help of a Conjunction, Adverb, or other Verb express or understood: And because these also generally can note Time, they

they very frequently make all the Tenses of these Moods to become Compound Tenses. For, with respect to their Execution, they are generally future; but with respect to their Modal Signification, they may fall under any of the other Distinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for instance, *Lege, Read thou*, with respect to its Execution, is future, but with respect to the Command it is present. Again, in *Legam, I may or can read*, the Action (if done at all) must be future, but the Liberty or Possibility are present; and so of others. Now, as it seems evident, that, from these Modifications of the Verb, more than from the bare Execution of it, the Tenses of these Moods have at first been distinguished; so I am of Opinion, that had Grammarians taken their Measures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter so intricate as they have done. For some of them, as Sanctius, &c. determining the Times of these Moods by the Execution only, have made the whole Imperative and Subjunctive of the Future Time, and the Infinitive and Participles of all Times, or rather of no Time: Others, viz. Vossius, Linacer, Alvarus, Verepæus, &c. tho' they will not go so far as Sanctius, yet upon the same Grounds make *utinam legam* the Future of the Optative; *Utinam legerem* the Present of it. By the same Rule they make a future of the Potential in RIM; as, *Citius crediderim, I should, or shall sooner believe*; and another of the Subjunctive in ISS&M; as, *Juravit se illum statim interfectorum, nisi jusjurandum sibi dedisset*; He swore he would presently kill him, if he should not swear to him, Cic. But, with all imaginable Deference to these great Men, I humbly think that these Tenses may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as Compound, i. e. respecting one Time as to their Execution, and another as to the various Modifications superadded to, or involved in their Signification. To instance in the two last Examples, (because they seem to have the greatest Difficulty) *citius crediderim* seems to import these two things, 1st, That I have and continue to have a Reason why I should not believe it; which Reason is of the Imperfect or past Time. And 2dly, That I shall sooner have believed it than another Thing, with respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many Examples where the Preterite in RIM hath the same Signification with the Future Perfect in RO, as, *Si te inde exemerim, Terent. for eximero*. See Voss. lib. v. cap. 15. and Aul. Gell. lib. xviii. cap. 2. As to the other Example, the Composition of two Times is yet more evident; for tho' *jusjurandum dedisset* be posterior, and consequently future with respect to *juravit*, yet it is prior, not only to the Time of the Relation, but to *interfecturum*; to prevent which it behoved necessarily to be past; and so of others. The same rule in my Opinion will likewise hold in the Infinitive and Participles, which of themselves have always one fixed Time; and when they seem to be of another Time, that is not in them but in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for instance, *Scribere* is always present, or co-existent with the Verb before it; and *scripsisse* is always prior to the same Verb in all its Tenses: as *Dicit, dixit, or dicet; juvat, juvit, or juvabit Me scribere and Me scripsisse*. So also the Participles have a fixed Time, present, past, or future; and when any Part of the Verb *Sum* is joined with them, they retain their own Time, and have these of that Verb superadded to them. But because there are innumerable Occasions of Speaking, wherein the nice Distinctions of Times are not necessary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiscuously used; as I could evince by a great many Examples, not only in the Passive, but Active Voice, both in the Latin and other Languages, if there were Place for it. Which yet, in my judgment, does not hinder, but that every Part of a Verb hath formally, and of its own Nature, a certain Time simple or compound, to which it is fixed and determined.]

IV. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLURAL, answering to the same Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.

V. There are three PERSONS in each Number; the FIRST speaks of itself, the SECOND is spoken to, and the THIRD is spoken of. The First hath only EGO and NOS, the Second only TU and VOS, and the Third any Substantive Noun singular and plural, put before the respective Terminations of the Verb, answering to them through all Voices, Moods and Tenses

[A Verb hath the same Respect to its Nominative that an Adjective hath to its Substantive; and therefore, as an Adjective hath not properly either Genders or Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for those of its Substantive, so a Verb hath properly neither Persons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations answering to the Persons and Numbers of its Nominative.]

NOTE 1. That Ego and Tu are seldom exprest, because the Terminations of the Verb immediately discover them, without any Hazard of a Mistake.

NOTE 2. That if a Substantive Noun be joined with Ego or Tu, the Verb is of the Person of these Pronouns, not of the Noun.

NOTE 3. That in the Continuation of a Discourse, the third Person is also frequently understood, because easily known by what went before; and these Pronouns, ille, ipse, iste hic, is, idem, quis, and qui, do often supply the place of it

The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Present	{ Act. the Theme of the Verb, and est, eth, or s; or for the greater Emphasis, do, dost doth, or does, before it.
	{ Pass. am, art, is, are, be, bee'st, with a Word in ed, en, t, &c.
Imperf.	{ Act. ed, ed'st, &c. or for the greater Emphasis, did did'st, before it.
	{ Pass. was, wa'st, were, wert, with a Word in ed, en, &c.
Perfect	{ Act. have, ha'st, hath, or has, with a Word in ed, en, &c. or as the Imp.
	{ Pass. have been, ha'st been, hath or has been, with a Word in ed, en, &c.
Pluperf.	{ Act. had, ha'd'st, with a Word in ed, en, &c.
	{ Pass. had been, ha'd'st been, with a Word in ed, en, &c.
Future	{ Act. shall, will, shalt, wilt, with the Verb.
	{ Pass. shall be, will be, shalt be, wilt be, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

The Subjunctive Mood Active has frequently these Signs :

Present.	may or can.
Imperf.	might, could, would, should.
Perfect.	may have or might have, could have, would have, should have.
Pluperf.	might have, could have, would have, should have, or had.
Future.	shall have.

The Passive has frequently the same Signs with be or been.

De Conjugationibus.

M. Q UOT sunt Conjugationes ?

D. Quatuor; Prima, Secunda, Tertia & Quarta.

M. Quæ sunt Notæ harum Conjugationum ?

Of Conjugations.

M. H OW many Conjugations are there ?

S. Four : First, Second, Third and Fourth.

M. What are the Marks of these Conjugations ?

D. Prima

Prima	} habet	{	A longum	} ante re	Infinitivi.	First	} habet	{	A long	} before re of	the Infinitive.
Secunda						Second					
Tertia						Third					
Quarta						Fourth					
			E longum						E long		
			E breve						E short		
			I longum						I long		

The common *Characteristic* or MARK by which these Conjugations are distinguished from one another, is one of these three Vowels, A, E, I, before the RE of the Infinitive Active, tho' they also may be known by the same Vowels in several other Parts of them; for A long is most frequent in the First, E long in the Second, E or I short in the Third, and I long in the Fourth: Only E before *bam*, *bas*, *bat*, &c. and before *mus* and *tis*; and *mur* and *mini* is always long in whatever Conjugation it is found.

But it is to be observed, that the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and all the Parts formed from them, (because of the great Irregularity of their middle Syllables, and constant Agreement in their last Vowel and in the Terminations arising from it in all Conjugations) cannot properly be said to be of any one Conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for Example, in *Fricui*, *Docui*, *Elicui*, *Amicui*, or in *Fricum*, *Docum*, *Elicum*, *Amicum*, or in the Parts that come from them, whereby to distinguish their Conjugations.

Prima Conjugatio.

A M O.

Vox Activa.

Præcipuæ Partes.

Præs. Indic.

Perfect.

Am-o,

am-avi,

INDICATIVUS Modus.

Præsens.

- Plur. Sing. { 1 A M-o
2 A Am-as,
3 Am-at:
1 Am-amus,
2 Am-atis,
3 Am-ant.

Imperfectum.

- Plur. Sing. { 1 Am-abam,
2 Am-abas,
3 Am-abat:
1 Am-abamus,
2 Am-abatis,
3 Am-abant,

The first Conjugation.

To Love.

The Active Voice.

The Principal Parts.

Sup.

Præs. Infinit.

am-atum,

am-are.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

The Present.

- 1 I Love, or do love.
2 Thou lovest, or dost love.
3 He loveth, or doth love:
1 We love, or do love,
2 Ye (or you) love, or do love,
3 They love, or do love.

The Imperfect.

- 1 I loved, or did love,
2 Thou lovedst, or didst love,
3 He loved, or did love:
1 We loved, or did love,
2 Ye loved, or did love,
3 They loved, or did love.

Perfectum

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-avi,	1	I have loved *
	2	Am-avisti,	2	Thou hast loved,
	3	Am-avit :	3	He hath loved :
Plur.	1	Am-avimus,	1	We have loved,
	2	Am-avistis,	2	Ye have loved,
	3	Am-averunt vel -avere.	3	They have loved.

Plusquamperfectum.

The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-averam,	1	I had loved,
	2	Am-averas,	2	Thou hadst loved,
	3	Am-averat :	3	He had loved :
Plur.	1	Am-averamus,	1	We had loved,
	2	Am-averatis,	2	Ye had loved,
	3	Am-averant.	3	They had loved.

Futurum.

The Future.

Sing.	1	Am-abo,	1	I shall or will love,
	2	Am-abis,	2	Thou shalt or wilt love,
	3	Am-abit :	3	He shall or will love :
Plur.	1	Am-abimus,	1	We shall or will love,
	2	Am-abitis,	2	Ye shall or will love,
	3	Am-abunt.	3	They shall or will love.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Præsens.

The Present.

Sing.	1	Am-em,	1	I may or can love,
	2	Am-es,	2	Thou mayst or canst love,
	3	Am-et :	3	He may or can love :
Plur.	1	Am-emus,	1	We may or can love,
	2	Am-etis,	2	Ye may or can love,
	3	Am-ent.	3	They may or can love.

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

Sing.	1	Am-arem,	1	I might, could, would, or should
	2	Am-ares,	2	Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, &c.
	3	Am-aret:	3	He might, could, would, or should
Plur.	1	Am-aremus,	1	We might, could, would, or should
	2	Am-aretis,	2	Ye might, could, would, or should
	3	Am-arent.	3	They might, could, would, or should

E

Perfectum.

* I loved, or did love, Thou lovedst, or didst love, &c. as in the Imperfect.

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-averim,	1	I may have loved,
		Am-averis,	2	Thou mayst have loved,
	3	Am-averit :	3	He may have loved :
Plur.	1	Am-averimus,	1	We may have loved,
	2	Am-averitis,	2	Ye may have loved,
	3	Am-averint.	3	They may have loved.

Plusquamperfectum.

The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-avisssem,	1	might, could, would, &c. have or
	2	Am-avisses,	2	Thou mightst, couldst, &c. have or
	3	Am-avisset :	3	He might, could, &c. have or
Plur.	1	Am-avisssemus,	1	We might, could, &c. have or
	2	Am-avissetis,	2	Ye might, could, &c. have or
	3	Am-avissent.	3	They might, could, &c. have or

Futurum.

The Future.

Sing.	1	Am-avero,	1	I shall have loved,
	2	Am-averis,	2	Thou shalt have loved,
	3	Am-averit :	3	He shall have loved :
Plur.	1	Am-averimus,	1	We shall have loved,
	2	Am-averitis,	2	Ye shall have loved,
	3	Am-averint.	3	They shall have loved.

IMPERATIVUS Modus.

The IMPERATIVE Mood

Præsens.

The Present.

Sing.	2	Am-a vel am-ato,	2	Love thou, or do thou love
	3	Am-ato :	3	Let him love :
Plur.	2	Am-ate vel am-atote,	2	Love ye, or do ye love,
	3	Am-anto.	3	Let them love.

INFINITIVUS Modus.

The INFINITIVE Mood

Præf. Am-are.

Præf. To love.

Perf. Am-avisse.

Perf. To have or had loved.

Fut. Am-aturum esse vel fuisse.

Fut. To be about to love.

PARTICIPIA.

The PARTICIPLES.

Præf. Am-ans.

Of the Present, Loving.

Fut. Am-aturus, -a, -um.

Of the Future, About to love.

GERUNDIA.

The GERUNDS.

Nom. Am-andum,

Nom. Loving.

Gen. Am-andi,

Gen. Of loving.

Dat. Am-ando

Dat

Acc

Abl

Priv

Post

V

IND

Sing.

2

3

1

2

3

1

2

3

1

2

3

Am

Am

Plu

Am-a

Am-a

Plu

Am-a

Am-a

1

2

3

Dat. Am-ando,
Acc. Am-andum,
Abl. Am-ando.

SUPINA.

Prius, Am-atum.
Posterius, Am-atu.

Dat. To loving,
Acc. Loving,
Abl. From, in, or by loving.
The SUPINES.
First, To love.
Last, To love, or to be loved.

VOX PASSIVA.

The Passive Voice.

Amor, amatus, amari.

INDICATIVUS Modus. The INDICATIVE Mood.
Præsens. The Present.

Sing. { 1 Am-or,
2 Am-aris vel -are,
3 Am-atur :
Plur. { 1 Am-amur,
2 Am-amini,
3 Am-antur.

1 I am loved,
2 Thou art loved.
3 He is loved :
1 We are loved,
2 Ye are loved,
3 They are loved.

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

Sing. { 1 Am-abar,
2 Am-abaris vel -abare,
3 Am abatur :
Plur. { 1 Am-abamur,
2 Am-abamini,
3 Am-abantur.

1 I was
2 Thou wast [wert]
3 He was
1 We were
2 Ye were
3 They were

loved.

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 sum vel fui,
2 es vel fuisti,
3 est vel fuit :
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 sumus vel fuimus,
2 estis vel fuistis,
3 sunt fuerunt v. fuere.

1 I have been
2 Thou hast been
3 He hath been
1 We have been
2 Ye have been
3 They have been

loved.

Plusquamperfectum.

The Future.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 eram vel fueram,
2 eras vel fueras,
3 erat vel fuerat :
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 eramus v. fueramus,
2 eratis vel fueratis,
3 erant vel fuerant.

1 I had been
2 Thou hadst been
3 He had been
1 We had been
2 Ye had been
3 They had been

loved.

Futurum.

The Future.

1 Am-abor,
2 Am-aberis vel -abere
3 Am-abitur :

1 I shall or will be
2 Thou shalt or wilt be
3 He shall or will be

loved.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Plur. { 1 Am-abimur,
2 Am-abimini,
3 Am-abuntur.

1 We shall or will be
2 Ye shall or will be
3 They shall or will be } loved.

SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Præsens.

The Present.

Sing. { 1 Am-er,
2 Am-eris vel -ere,
3 Am-etur :
Plur. { 1 Am-emur,
2 Am-emini,
3 Am-entur.

1 I may or can be
2 Thou mayst or canst be
3 He may or can be
1 We may or can be
2 Ye may or can be
3 They may or can be } loved.

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

Sing. { 1 Am-arer,
2 Am-areris vel -arere,
3 Am-aretur :
Plur. { 1 Am-aremur,
2 Am-aremini,
3 Am-arentur.

1 I might, could, would, &c.
2 Thou mightst, couldst, &c.
3 He might, could, &c.
1 We might, could, &c.
2 Ye might, could, &c.
3 They might, could, &c. } be loved.

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 sim vel fuerim, 1 I may have been
2 sis vel fueris, 2 Thou mayst have been
3 sit vel fuerit : 3 He may have been
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 simusv. fuerimus, 1 We may have been
2 sitis vel. fueritis, 2 Ye may have been
3 sint vel fuerint. 3 They may have been

Plusquamperfectum.

The Plu-perfect.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 essem vel fuisset, 1 I might, could, &c. have or
2 esses vel fuisses, 2 Thou mightst, &c. have or
3 esset vel fuisset : 3 He might, &c. have or
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 essemusv. fuissetis, 1 We might, &c. have or
2 essetis vel fuissetis, 2 Ye might, &c. have or
3 essent vel fuissent, 3 They might, &c. have or

Futurum.

The Future.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 fuero,
2 fueris,
3 fuerit :
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 fuerimus,
2 fueritis,
3 fuerint.

1 I shall have been
2 Thou shalt have been
3 He shall have been
1 We shall have been
2 Ye shall have been
3 They shall have been } loved.

IMPERATIVUS Modus.

The Imperative Mood.

Præsens.

The Present.

Sing. { 2 Am-are vel -ator,
3 Am-ator :

2 Re thou loved,
let him be loved :

plur.

Plur. { 2 Am-amini, 2 Be ye loved,
3 Am-antor. 3 Let them be loved.

INFINITIVUS Modus. The INFINITIVE Mood.

Præs. Am-ari. To be loved.

Perf. Am-atum esse vel fuisse. To have or had been loved.

Fut. Am-atum iri, To be about to be loved.

PARTICIPIA.

The PARTICIPLES.

Perfecti temporis, Am-atus, -a, -um. Of the Perfect, Loved.

Futuri, Am-andus, -a, -um. Of the Fut. To be loved.

Secunda Conjugatio.

V O X A C T I V A.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere.

INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. **D**^Ioc-²eo, -³es, -¹et : -¹emus, -²etis, -³ent.
Im. Doc-¹ebam, -²ebas, -³ebat : -¹ebamus, -²ebatis, -³ebant.
Perf. Doc-¹ui, -²uisti, -³uit : -¹uimus, -²uistis, { -³uerunt,
-³uere.
Plus. Doc-¹ueram, -²ueras, -³uerat : -¹ueramus, -²ueratis, -³uerant.
Fut. Doc-¹ebo, -²ebis, -³ebit : -¹ebimus, -²ebitis, -³ebunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Doc-¹eam, -²eas, -³eat : -¹eamus, -²eatis, -³eant.
Im. Doc-¹erem, -²eres, -³eret : -¹eremus, -²eretis, -³erent.
Perf. Doc-¹uerim, -²ueris, -³uerit : -¹uerimus, -²ueritis, -³uerint.
Plus. Doc-¹uissem, -²uisses, -³uisset : -¹uissemus, -²uissetis, -³uisissent.
Fut. Doc-¹uero, -²ueris, -³uerit : -¹uerimus, -²ueritis, -³uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Doc- { -e, eto : { -ete, -ento.
-eto, { -etote,

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.

Præs. Doc-ere,	1 Doc-tum.	Pr. Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,
Perf. Doc-uisse,	2 Doc-tu.	Fut. Doc-turus.	Doc-endi,
Fut. Doc-turum			Doc-endo,
esse vel fuisse.			

V O X.

V O X P A S S I V A.

Doceor, doctus, doceri.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Doc-eor,	{ -eris, -ere,	-etur : -emur, -emini, -entur.
<i>Im.</i> Doc-ebar,	{ -ebaris, -ebare,	-ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-ebor,	{ -eberis, -ebere,	-ebitur : -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

<i>Pr.</i> Doc-ear,	{ -earis, -eare,	-eatur : -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.
<i>Im.</i> Doc-erer,	{ -ereris, -erere,	-eretur : -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.

I M P E R A T I V U S.

<i>Præs.</i> Doc-	{ -ere, -etor,	-etor : -emini, -entor.
-------------------	-------------------	-------------------------

I N F I N I T I V U S.

Præs. Doc-eri.
Perf. Doc-tum esse *vel* fuisse.
Fut. Doc-tum iri.

P A R T I C I P I A.

Perf. Doc-tus, -a, -um.
Fut. Doc-endus, -a, -um.

Tertia Conjugatio.

V O X A C T I V A.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Præs.</i> L Eg-o,	¹ -is, ² -it : ³ -imus, ¹ -itis, ² -unt.	
<i>Imp.</i> L Leg-ebam,	-ebas, -ebat :	-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
<i>Perf.</i> Leg-i,	-isti, -it :	-imus, -istis, -erunt, -ere.
<i>Plus.</i> Leg-eram,	-eras, -erat :	-eramus, -eratis, -erant.
<i>Fut.</i> Leg-am,	-es, -et :	-emus, -etis, -ent.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

<i>Præs.</i> Leg-am,	-as, -at :	-amus, -atis, -ant.
<i>Imp.</i> Leg-erem,	-eres, -eret :	-eremus, -eretis, -erent.

Perf.

Part II. Chap. III. of Verb.

39

<i>Perf.</i> Leg-erim,	-eris,	-erit :	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
<i>Plus.</i> Leg-issem,	-isses,	-isset :	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i> Leg-ero,	-eris,	-erit :	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Leg-	{ -e, -ito,	-ito,	{ -ite, -itote,	unto.
-------------------	----------------	-------	--------------------	-------

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.

<i>Præs.</i> Leg-ere.	1 Lec-tum.	<i>Pr.</i> Leg-ens.	Leg-endum,
<i>Perf.</i> Leg-isse.	2 Lec-tu.	<i>Fut.</i> Lec-turus.	Leg-endi,
<i>Fut.</i> Lec-turum esse vel fuisse.			Leg-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

<i>th</i> Legor,	lectus,	legi.
---------------------	---------	-------

INDICATIVUS.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Leg-or,	{ -eris, -ere, -itur : -imur, -imini, -untur.
<i>Im.</i> Leg-ebar,	{ -ebaris, -ebare, -ebatur : -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
<i>Fut.</i> Leg-ar,	{ -eris, -ere, -etur : -emur, -emini, -entur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Pr.</i> Leg-ar,	{ -aris, -are, -atur : -amur, -amini, -antur.
<i>Im.</i> Leg-erer,	{ -eraris, -erere, -eretur : -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Leg-	{ -ere, -itor,	-itor :	-imini,	-untor.
-------------------	-------------------	---------	---------	---------

INFINITIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Leg-i.
<i>Perf.</i> Lec-tum esse vel fuisse.
<i>Fut.</i> Lec-tum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

<i>Perf.</i> Lec-tus,	-a,	-um,
<i>Fut.</i> Leg-endus,	-a,	-um.

Quarta Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Audio, ¹audi, ²auditu, ³audire.

INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. **A**Ud-¹io, ²-is, ³-it, ¹-imus, ²-itis, ³-iunt.
Im. Aud-¹iebam, ²-iebas, ³-iebat: ¹-iebamus, ²-iebatis, ³-iebant.
Perf. Aud-¹ivi, ²-ivisti, ³-ivit: ¹-ivimus, ²-ivistis, ³-iverunt, ³-ivere,
Plus. Aud-¹iveram, ²-iveras, ³-iverat: ¹-iveramus, ²-iveratis, ³-iverant.
Fut. Aud-¹iam, ²-ies, ³-iet: ¹-iemus, ²-ietis, ³-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Aud-¹iam, ²-ias, ³-iat: ¹-iamus, ²-iatis, ³-iant.
Im. Aud-¹irem, ²-ires, ³-iret: ¹-iremus, ²-iretis, ³-irent.
Perf. Aud-¹iverim, ²-iveris, ³-iverit: ¹-iverimus, ²-iveritis, ³-iverint.
Plus. Aud-¹ivissem, ²-ivisses, ³-ivisset: ¹-ivissemus, ²-ivissetis, ³-ivissent.
Fut. Aud-¹ivero, ²-iveris, ³-iverit: ¹-iverimus, ²-iveritis, ³-iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. Aud- { ¹-i, ²-ito: { ¹-ite, ³-iunto.
 { ²-ito, { ²-itote,

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.

<i>Pr.</i> Aud- ¹ ire.	¹ Aud- ¹ itum.	<i>Pr.</i> Aud- ¹ iens.	Aud- ¹ iendum,
<i>Perf.</i> Aud- ¹ ivisse.	² Aud- ¹ itu.	<i>Fut.</i> Aud- ¹ iturus.	Aud- ¹ iendi,
<i>Fut.</i> Aud- ¹ iturum			Aud- ¹ iendo,
esse vel fuisse.			

VOX PASSIVA.

Audior, ¹auditus, ²audiri.

INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. Aud-¹ior, { ¹-iris, ²-itur: ¹-imur, ²-imini, ³-iuntur.
 { ²-ire,
Im. Aud-¹iebar, { ¹-iebaris, ²-iebatur: ¹-iebamur, ²-iebamini, ³-iebantur.
 { ²-iebare,
Fut. Aud-¹iar, { ¹-ieris, ²-ietur: ¹-iemur, ²-iemini, ³-ientur.
 { ²-iere,

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Aud-¹iar, { ¹-iaris, ²-iatur: ¹-iamur, ²-iamini, ³-iantur.
 { ²-iare,
Im. Aud-¹irer, { ¹-ireris, ²-iretur: ¹-iremur, ²-iremini, ³-irentur.
 { ²-irere,

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs.

Præs. A.

Perf. A.

Fut. A.

¶ Note

Four

Passive

verb

and

being

First

care

must

or (

I. REM

dere

ampl

1. W

the Ver

So lik

tur, The

before th

a dying.

2. W

after the

love? Sh

3. W

it from

and oth

ral YOU

mighty

Contem

4. Th

Nunquan

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Aud. { -ire, -itor : -imini, -iuntor

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

Præs. Aud. -iri.

Perf. Aud. -itum esse vel fuisse.

Fut. Aud. -itum iri.

Perf. Aud. -itus, -a, -um.

Fut. Aud. -iendus, -a, -um.

¶ Note, That in the Examples of the Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations, we have omitted such Parts of the Passive Voice as are supplied by the Participle-perfect with the verb Sum, viz. The Perfect and Pluperfect of the Indicative, and the Perfect, Plu-perfect, and Future of the Subjunctive, as being the same in all Conjugations with the Example of the First, the Change of the Participle only excepted : But it is carefully to be observed, that the Participle being an Adjective, must agree in Gender, Number, and Case, with its Substantive, or (which is the same thing) with the Person before it.

I. REMARKS shewing when LATIN Verb is to be rendered otherwise in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Examples.

1. WHEN the Continuation of a Thing is signified, the English Verb may be varied in all its Tenses by the Participle in ING, with the Verb AM; as,

Præs. I am reading,

Imp. I was reading,

Perf. I have been reading,

Plup. I had been reading,

Fut. I shall be reading,

} for { I read.
I did read.
I have read.
I had read.
I shall read.

So likewise in the Passive Voice, The House is building, Domus ædificatur, The Lesson was prescribing, Lectio præscribatur. Sometimes a is set before the Participle; as, While the House is a building, It is a doing, He is a dying.

2. When a Question is asked, the Nominative Case or Person is set after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb; as, Love I? Do I love? Can I love? Should he be loved?

3. We have made THOU the second Person singular, to distinguish it from the Plural. But it is customary with us, (as also with the French and others) tho' we speak but to one particular Person, to use the Plural YOU; and never THOU, but when we address ourselves to Almighty God, or otherwise when we signify Familiarity, Disdain, or Contempt.

4. The Perfect of the Indicative is often Englished as the Imperfect; as Nunquam amavi hunc hominem, I never loved [or, did love] this Man.

42 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

See a train of Examples in *Ovid. Metamorph lib. 1. from v. 21 to 39.*

5. The PERFECT Tense is frequently Englished by HAD after *Antequam, Postquam, Ubi* or *Ut* for *Postquam*; as, *Postquam superavimus Isthmum*, After we had [were] past over the Isthmus, *Ovid. Hac ubi dicta dedit*, When he had spoken these Words, *Liv. Ut me salutavit, statim Romam profectus est*, After he had saluted me, &c. *Cic.*

6. We have chosen MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, &c. for the English of the SUBJUNCTIVE Mood, because these are the most frequent Signs of it, and distinguish it best from other Moods; but very often it is the same with the Indicative, save only that it hath some Conjunction or Indefinite Word before it; such as, *If, Seeing, Lest, That, Although, I wish*, &c. as, *Si amem*, If I love; *Ne amem*, Lest I love; *Causa est cur amem*, It is the Cause why I love, *Ovid.* And frequently it hath both; as, *Oro ut ames*, I entreat that you may love, *Idem.*

7. The PRESENT of the Subjunctive after *Quasi, Tanquam*, and the like, is sometimes Englished as the Imperfect; as, *Quasi intelligant qualis sit*, As if they understood what kind of Person he is, *Cic.*

8. When a Question is asked, the Present of the Subjunctive is frequently Englished by SHALL or SHOULD; as, *Eloquar an sileam?* Shall I speak or be silent? *Virg. Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? *Ovid.* Likewise after *Non est quod*; as, *Non est (supple causa) quod eas*, There is no Reason why you should go, or you need not go. Sometimes it is Englished by WOULD; as, *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think they had sworn to [commit] Wickedness, *Ovid.*

9. We have Englished the PERFECT of the Subjunctive in RIM by MAY HAVE, (as, *Ne frustra hi tales viri venerint*, That such Men as these may not have come in vain, *Cic. Forsitan audieris*, You may perhaps have heard it;) to distinguish it from the Present and Pluperfect, by the Signs of which it is also most frequently Englished; as, *Ut sic dixerim*, That I may so speak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where should I have heard it? *Unus homo tantas strages ediderit?* Could one Man make so great a Slaughter? *Virg. Fortasse errarim*, Perhaps I might be in an Error, *Plin. Oratores quos viderim peritissimi*, The ablest Orators I have seen [or could see] *Quintil.*

10. This Perfect in RIM sometimes inclines very much to a Future Signification, and then it is Englished by SHOULD, WOULD, COULD, CAN, WILL, SHALL; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, *Juv. Libenter audierim*, I would gladly hear, *Cic. Ciceronem cuicunque eorum facile opposuerim*, I could easily match Cicero with any of them, *Quintil. Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell, *Cic. Nec tamen excluderim alios*, And yet I will not exclude others, *Plin. Si paululum modo quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, If you but trip in the least, I shall be undone, *Ter.* But all those Ways of speaking, tho' indeed they respect the Future as to the Execution, yet they seem also to look a little beyond it, to a Time when their Futurity shall be past; and so come near in Signification to the Future in RO.

11. The Perfect of the Subjunctive after *Quasi, Tanquam*, and the like, may sometimes be Englished by HAD; as, *Quasi affuerim*, As if I had been present, *Plaut. Perinde ac si jam vicerint*, As if they had already overcome, *Cic.*

12. The PLUPERFECT in ISSEM is sometimes Englished by SHOULD, as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcunque imperavisset, se esse facturos*, He might command what he pleased, whatever he commanded [should command] they would do, *Cæs. Fœdus ictum est his legibus, ut cujus populi cives in certamine vicissent, is alteri imperaret*, An Agreement was made on these

Terms,

Terms.
Comb
pens w
and co
wards
whatfo
durum
whatfo
was the
fect in
we have
of a Fu
prior to
future v
for mak

13. HAVE,
are omi
cut off
fecero h
If he do
tasse ali
re juvero
or with
Langua
Future o
ded that
as Mr
that the
Time in
that eve
der of T
tabis, Yo
pute, Cic
of an Ac
other Ac
miscuous
mally th
very Arg
the Tens

14. T
Can, Mig
the bare

15. B
hath an
Mood, t
understo
of the In
Verb var

{ Dicir
{ Dixit
{ Dicet

Terms, that that People whose Countrymen should be victorious in that Combat, should have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a Thing is signified as future at a certain past Time referred to, and commonly takes Place, when what was formerly said directly is afterwards recited indirectly; as, *Ne debita dabitur quodcumque optaris*, Doubt not, whatsoever thou shalt chuse shall be given thee, *Ovid. Sol Phaethonti facurum se esse dixit, quicquid optasset*, The Sun told Phaethon that he would do whatsoever he should chuse, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, That what was the Future of the Subjunctive in the direct Speech, becomes the Plu-perfect in the indirect Recital of it. See *Turner's Exercises*, p. 21, &c. But, as we have said, p. 30. the Plu-perfect, notwithstanding its coming in the Place of a Future, still retains its own proper compound Time, that is, it was prior to a Thing now past at the Time of the Recital by *Cicero*, tho' it was future when first spoken by the Sun. And therefore there is no Reason for making this Termination in *issem*, a Future Tense, as Mr *Turner* does.

13. Tho' the proper English of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL HAVE, yet generally the HAVE or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted, as, *Qui Antonium opprefferit, is bellum confecerit*, He who shall cut off Antony, shall put an end to the War, *Cic. Haud desinam donec perfecero hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter. Si negaverit*, If he denies it, *Cic.* Sometimes it is Englished by WILL; as, *Dixit fortasse aliquis*, Somebody will perhaps say, *Cic. Aut consolando, aut consilio, aut re juvero*, I will assist you either by comforting you, or with Counsel, or with Money, *Idem.* But tho' we thus render the Future in RO in our Language, and tho' (which is more material) very frequently it and the Future of the Indicative are used promiscuously) yet, I cannot be persuaded that in any Instance the formal Significations of these are the same, as Mr *Johnson* contends, p. 339. but still think with the great *Vossius*, that the Future in RO is always a Future-perfect, that is, that there is a Time insinuated when a thing yet future shall be finished or past; and that even when a Future of the Indicative is joined with it, which in Order of Time should be done before it; as, *Pergratum mihi feceris si disputabis*, You shall have done, [shall do] me a great favour, if you shall dispute, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finishing of an Action yet future, without formally considering the finishing of another Action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiscuous Usage of Tenses one for another be sufficient to make them formally the same, then we shall confound all Tenses, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr *Johnson* makes use of against *Sanctius*, with respect to the Tenses of the Infinitive.

14. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Would*, *Could*, (which are sometimes Verbs themselves, and not the bare Signs of them :) also after *Must*, *Bid*, *Dare*, *Let*, *Help*, and *Make*.

15. But what is most to be regarded in the Infinitive is, that when it hath an Accusative before it, it is commonly Englished as the Indicative Mood, the Particle THAT being sometimes put before it, but oftener understood. And it is carefully to be remarked, That the same Tenses of the Infinitive are differently Englished, according as the preceding Verb varies its Tenses; as will appear in the following Scheme:

{ <i>Dicit me scribere,</i>	He says [that] I write.
{ <i>Dixit me scribere,</i>	He said [that] I was writing.
{ <i>Dicet me scribere,</i>	He shall say [that] I am writing.

{ Dicit me scripsisse,	He says [that] I wrote, or did write.
{ Dixit me scripsisse,	He said [that] I had written.
{ Dicet me scripsisse,	He shall say [that] I have written, or did write.
{ Dicit me scripturum, [esse,]	He says [that] I will write.
{ Dixit me scripturum, [esse,]	He said [that] I would write.
{ Dicet me scripturum, [esse,]	He shall say [that] I will write.
{ Dicit me scripturum, [fuisse,]	He says [that] I would have written.
{ Dixit me scripturum, [fuisse,]	He said [that] I would have written.
{ Dicet me scripturum, [fuisse,]	He shall say [that] I would have written.

It will be of great Use to accustom the Learner to render the Infinitive after this Manner, both in *English* and *Latin*, especially after he has been taught something of Construction : And then to cause him vary the Accusative *Me* into *te, se, illum, hominem, fœminam, &c.* and these again into the Plural, *Nos, vos, se, illos, homines, fœminas, &c.* But he must be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number, and Case.

NOTE, 1. That when the preceding Verb is of the *Present* or *Future* Tense, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* with *esse*, is rendered by *SHALL* or *WILL*; and when it is of the *Perfect* Tense, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* is rendered by *WOULD*, as in the Examples above; and sometimes by *SHOULD*; as *Dixi te scitutum esse*, I said that you should know.

NOTE, 2. That when the preceding Verb is of the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* Tenses, the *English* of the *Infinitive* is the same as when it is of the *Perfect*.

16. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive Passive*, made up with *Sum* or *Sim*, are Englished by *AM, ART, IS, ARE*, instead of *HAVE BEEN*, when the Thing is signified to be just now past; as, *vulneratus sum*, I am wounded; *Opus finitum est*, the Work is finished; *Cum tempora mutata sint*, Since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently Englished by *WAS, WAST, WERE, WERT*, as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken; As is also what is called the *Plu-perfect*, with *eram* and *essem*; as, *Labor finitus erat*, the Labour was finished; *Si labor finitus esset*, If the Labour were finished.

II. REMARKS on the LATIN Conjugations.

1. A Great Part of the *Passive* Voice, and some of the *Active*, is made up of two of its own Participles and the auxiliary Verb *Sum*, (of which you have the full Conjugation, p. 52.) after this Manner.

The Participle Perfect with	{ Sum or fui eram or fueram sim or fuerim essem or fuisset fuero esse or fuisse	} makes the	Perf.	{	Indicat.	} Passive.	
			Plup.				
			Perf.	{	Subjunct.		
			Plup.				
			The Participle Fut. Act. with	{ esse or fuisse	}		Fut.
Perf.							
			Fut.		Infinit.	Active.	

2. Having p. 30. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every Part of a Verb, with all its Participles, have a certain fixed Time, simple or compound, which they formally and of their own Nature signify, it will perhaps be here expected, that I should account for that great Variety that is found in

in the P
I must p
PAST;
without
the Thi
Present,
fect, Plu
Tenses,
with an
for Insta
When I
finished
Time,
hence it
it. But
comple
I mean
2. *Ædificat*
Ædificat
which i
certain
shall be
Time w
finishin
nished a
be prior
Times,
it to pa
this pro
frequen
consider
same T
or whet
Thing
being th
at rande
these C
Rules a
selves a
tho' rea
ly use th
there ar
begun;
sing or p
gone b
tion, an
cution i
Action
fined to
by them
ses in b
Abuse o
haps on

in the Passive Voice. To put this Matter in the clearest Light I am able, I must premise another Division of the *Tenses*, viz. into PASSING and PAST; or into such as import the Continuance of an Action or Thing, without regard to the ending or finishing of it; and such as import that the Thing is finished (or to be finished) and done. Of the first Sort are the *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future-imperfect*; of the second sort are the *Perfect*, *Plu-perfect*, and *Future-perfect*, See p. 29. From this Division of the *Tenses*, together with what we have formerly said, we are furnished with an easy Method of distinguishing all the Parts of the Passive. Thus, for Instance, let the Subject of Discourse be the building of an House. 1. When I say, *Domus edificatur*, I mean that it is just now a-building, but not finished. 2. When *Ædificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain past Time, a-building, but not then finished. 3. *Ædificabitur*, that some time hence it shall be a-building, without any formal Regard to the finishing of it. But when I make use of the *Participle-perfect*, I always signify a Thing completed and ended; but with these Subdistinctions, 1. *Ædificata est*; I mean simply, that it is finished, without any Regard to the Time when. 2. *Ædificata fuit*; it is finished, and some time since has intervened. 3. *Ædificata erat*; it was finished at a certain past Time referred to, with which it was contemporary. 4. *Ædificata fuerat*; it was finished before a certain past time referred to, to which it was prior. 5. *Ædificata erit*; it shall be finished some Time hereafter, either without regard to a particular Time when, or with respect to a certain Time yet future, with which its finishing shall be contemporary. 6. And lastly, *Ædificata fuerit*; it shall be finished and past before another Thing yet future, to which its finishing shall be prior. And thus we have nine different Times or Complications of Times, without confounding them with one another. But then, how comes it to pass that these are so frequently used promiscuously? I answer, That this proceeds from one or more of these four Reasons, 1. Because it very frequently happens in Discourse, that we have no Occasion particularly to consider these various Relations and Complications of Times; and 'tis the same Thing to our Purpose whether the Thing is or was done, or a doing; or whether it was done just now, or some time ago; or whether another Thing was (or shall be) contemporary with, or prior to it; and the Matter being thus, we reckon ourselves at liberty to take several Parts of the Verb at random, as being secure not only of being understood, but also that in these Circumstances whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the Rules above, shall be found literally true. 2. It is usual with us to state ourselves as present with, and as it were eye-witnesses of the Things we relate, tho' really they were transacted long before, whence it is that we frequently use the Present instead of some past Time. 3. 'Tis to be remarked, that there are some Verbs, the Action whereof is in some Sense finished when begun; in which Case it will sometimes be all one whether we use the passing or past Tenses. And, 4. The Present Tense (which strictly speaking is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a large Acceptation, and sometimes used for the Future, when we signify that the Execution is very near, or (according to *Perizonius*) when together with the Action we take in also the Preparation to it. The Brevity we are confined to will not allow us to illustrate these Things with Examples. But by them I think we may account for the promiscuous Usage of the Tenses in both Voices; and what cannot be reduced to these, seems to be an Abuse of the Language, and being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only among the Poets, ought not to be made a common Standard.

9. Upon the same Account we have omitted the Future of the Infinitive in ASSERE formed from ASSO; as *Impetrassere, reconciliassere, expugnassere*, in *Plautus*, for *impetratum esse*, &c.

10. Tho' we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus esse vel fuisse*, &c. in the *Nominative*, as, *Dicitur amaturus esse*, yet we have contented ourselves with the *Accusative amatum* and *amatum*, as most common, reserving the Distinction between these to Construction. [See Page 77.]

11. The Future of the Infinitive Passive is made up of the First Supine and IRI the Infinitive Passive of EO: And therefore it is not varied in Numbers and Genders, as the Parts made up of the Participle with *Sum*.

12. But the Supine with IRE is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as some teach; for such Phrases as these, *Amatum ire, Doctum ire*, are rather of the Present than Future Tense.

13. The Participle in DUS with *esse* and *fuisse*, is not properly the Future of the Infinitive Passive, as is commonly believed: For it does not so much import *Futurity*, as *Necessity, Duty, or Merit*. For there is a great Difference between these two Sentences, *Dicit literas a se scriptum iri*, and *Dicit literas a se scribendas esse*; the first signifying, *That a Letter will be written by him*, or, *That he will write a Letter*; and the second, *That a Letter must be written by him*, or, *He is obliged to write a Letter*. For though *Sanctius* and *Messieurs de Port Royal* contend, that this Participle is sometimes used for simple *Futurity*, yet I think *Perizonius* and *Johnson* have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, That the *Imperative Mood* wants the first Person both singular and plural, because no Man can or needs command or exhort himself; Or, if he does, he must juggle himself out of the first into the second Person, as in that of *Catullus* speaking to himself, *At tu Catulle, destinatus obdura*; But you *Catullus*, continue obstinate.

15. The Present of the *Subjunctive* is most frequently used instead of the *Imperative*, especially in forbidding, after *Ne, nemo, nullus*, &c. as, *Valeas*, Farewell, for *vale*; *Ne facias*, Do it not, rather than *Ne fac*. And sometimes the Future of the *Subjunctive*; as, *Tu videris*, See you to it. *Ne dixeris*, Don't say it. And sometimes also the Future of the *Indicative*; as, *Non occides*, Thou shalt not kill, for *Ne occide*, or *occidito*. *Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis*, Cic. i. e. *Sed vale, meaque negotia vide*. *Referes ergo hac & nuncius ibis Pelidae genitori*, Virg. i. e. *refer & ito*. But it is to be remarked, that none of these are proper *Imperatives*; for to the first is understood, *oro, rogo, peto*, or the like, with *ut*; as also to the second, with *ut* understood, or *ne* exprest; and the third is only a Command by Consequence, because of the Authority, Influence, or Power of the Speaker. For which Reason, and to keep the Moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded these from the *Imperative*: Though the common *Rudiments* take in the first, and *Alvarus* the second and third. However, it is observable, that we shew most Civility and Respect, when we use the *Subjunctive*, and most Authority by the Future of the *Indicative*, and NTO of the *Imperative*; which last is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are delivered. But this Rule is not always followed.

16. The RIS of the second Person Passive is more usual than RE; and ERUNT of the Perfect of the *Indicative Active* than ERE; especially in Prose, in which, if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

III. REMARKS

III. REMARKS upon ENGLISH Verbs.

1. **A**N English Verb hath only two Tenses, distinguished by different Terminations, and both in the Active Voice, viz: the Present and Preterite. The Present is the Verb itself, and the Preterite is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, *Fill, filled*; *Love, loved*.

2. All the other Parts of the *Active*, and the whole *Passive*, is made up of the Auxiliary Verbs *Do, Have, Shall, Will, May, Can, and Am*; as in Page 31. and in the Example, *To love, Page 32. &c.*

3. An English Verb hath different Terminations for the Persons of the singular Number. The Present hath three or four. The first Person is the Verb itself; the second ends in *est* or *st*; the third in *eth, es, or s*. The Preterite hath only two; the first commonly ending in *ed*, and the second in *est* or *st*. But the third Person singular of the Preterite, and all the Persons plural, both of it and the Present, cannot otherwise be distinguished than by the Nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the *Latin*.

4. We have two Participles, the Present ending always in *ing*, and the Preterite ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many Irregular English Verbs; but it is to be noted, 1. That that Irregularity relates only to the Termination of the Preterite Tense, and the Passive Participle. 2. That it reaches only such Words as are native, and originally English. 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or derived from Words of one Syllable.

4. That where the Preterite is regular, the Passive Participle is the same with it. Except *Hewed, Mowed, Shewed, Snowed, Sowed*; which have *Hewn, Mown, Shown, Snown, Sown*.

6. These Irregularities may be reduced to the following heads:

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c, ch, sh, f, k, p, x*; and after *s* and *th* when pronounced hard; and sometimes after *l, m, n, r*, when a short Vowel goes before it; as, *Plac't, Snatch't, Fish't, Walk't, Dwelt, Smelt*. But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either shortened, or changed into a short one; as, *Kept, Slept, Wept, Crept, Swept, Leapt*, from *keep, sleep, weep, creep, sweep, leap*; as also sometimes before *l, m, n, r*, and *v* turned into *f*; as *Feel, felt; Dream, dreamt; Mean, meant; Leave, left*.

(2.) When the Present ends in *d* or *t*, the Preterite is sometimes the same with it; as *Read, Cof't, Hurt, Burst, Hit, Quit*; and when two Vowels precede, the last is left out; as, *Spread, spred; Lead, led; Feed, fed; Bleed, bled; Meet, met*. When a Consonant comes before *d*, it is sometimes changed into *t*; as, *Bend, bent; Lend, lent; Send, sent; Rend, rent; Gird, girt*.

(3.) Most of the other irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Lists:

I. Such as have their Preterite and Participle Passive the same.

Awake, awoke.	Find, found.	Pay, paid.	Sting, stung.
Abide, abode.	Flee, fled.	Say, said.	Swing, swung.
Beseech, besought.	Fling, flung.	Seek, sought.	Swim, swum.
Bind, bound.	Grind, ground.	Sell, sold.	Teach, taught.
Bring, brought.	Gild, gilt.	Sit, sat.	Tell, told.
Buy, bought.	Hang, hung.	Shine, shone.	Think, thought.
Catch, caught.	Hear, heard.	Spin, spun.	Work, wrought.
Dig, dug.	Lay, laid.	Spring, sprung.	Win, won.
Drink, drunk.	Loic, lost.	Stand, stood.	Wind, wound.
Fight, fought.	Make, made.	Stick, stuck.	Wring, wrung.

II. Such

Bear,
Begin,
Bid,
Beat,
Bite,
Blow,
Chide,
Chuse,
Cleave,
Come,
Crow,
Dare,
Do,
Draw,
Drive,
Eat,
Fall,
Fly,
Forfak

The
Forgat
used.

Swam,

No

for th

worship

en; as

No

in Eng

used b

so muc

No

Word

fore it

Active

ticiple

EXC

like In

&c. in

of HA

No

and DI

distingu

Thing

either f

any pa

just now

of these

Indefinit

No

guished

II. Such as have the Preterite and Participle different ; as,

Bear, bore, born.	Freeze, froze, frozen	Shrink, shrank, shrunk.
Begin, began, begun.	Get, got, gotten.	Sink, sank, sunk.
Bid, bad, bidden.	Give, gave, given.	Slay, slew, slain.
Beat, beat, beaten.	Go, went, gone.	Slide, slid, slidden.
Bite, bit, bitten.	Grow, grew, grown.	Smite, smote, smitten.
Blow, blew, blown.	Hew, hewed, hewn.	Strike, struck, stricken.
Chide, chid, chidden.	Hide, hid, hidden.	Speak, spoke, spoken.
Chuse, chose, chosen.	Hold, held, holden.	Spit, spat, spitten.
Cleave, clove, cleft.	Know, knew, known.	Strive, strove, striven.
Come, came, come.	Lie, lay, lay'n.	Swear, swore, sworn.
Crow, crew, crow'd.	Ride, rode, ridden.	Swell, swell'd, swollen.
Dare, durst, dared.	Ring, rang, rung.	Take, took, taken.
Do, did, done.	Rise, rose, risen.	Tear, tore, torn.
Draw, drew, drawn.	Run, ran, run.	Thrive, thrrove, thriven.
Drive, drove, driven.	See, saw, seen.	Throw, threw, thrown.
Eat, eat, eaten.	Seethe, sod, sodden.	Tread, trode, troden.
Fall, fell, fallen.	Shake, shook, shaken.	Wear, wore, worn.
Fly, flew, flown.	Shear, shorn, shorn.	Weave, wove, woven.
Forfake forfook forfaken.	Shoot, shot, shotten.	Write, wrote, written.

These Preterites, *Bare, Share, Sware, Tare, Ware, Clave, Gat, Begat, Forgat, Brake, Spake, Slang, Sprang, Swang, Wan, Stank, Sank*, are seldom used. But, *Beseech'd, Catch'd, Work'd, Digged, Gilded, Girded, Hang'd, Swam, Writ, for Besought, Caught, &c* are frequently to be met with.

NOTE, 1. That when the Verb ends in one Consonant, that Consonant is for the most Part doubled before *ing, ed, est, edst, and eth* : as, *Worship, worshipping, worshipped, worshippeth, worshippeth* : As also before *en* ; as, *Bid, bidden*.

NOTE, 2. That the APOSTROPHUS (which was become too common in *English Verbs* ; as, *Lov'd, lov'st*, for *loved, lovest*,) begins now to be disused by the most polite Writers in Prose ; but Poets still use it, tho' not so much as formerly.

NOTE, 3. That the *Preterite Active* and the *Participle Passive* (when one Word serves for both) are thus distinguished : When it hath nothing before it but the Nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the *Preterite Active* ; but when it hath any Part of the helping Verb *AM* ; it is the *Participle Passive*.

EXCEPT *Come, Gone, Run, Set, Risen, Fallen, Grown, Withered* ; and such like Intransitive Verbs, which have frequently the *Passive Signs AM, ART, &c.* instead of *HAVE* in the *Perfect Tense*, and *WAS, WAST, &c.* instead of *HAD* in the *Plu-perfect* ; as, *Veni, I am come ; Veneram, I was come*.

NOTE, 4. That tho' the Latin *Perfect* frequently answers both to *HAVE* and *DID*, (or the *Preterite Termination ED, &c.*) yet they seem to be thus distinguished, *DID* or *ED, &c.* respects a certain past Time, in which the Thing was finished or a finishing ; as, *I wrote, or did write Yesterday* : *HAVE* either speaks of a Thing as but just now past, or at least does not refer to any particular Time that it happened at ; as, *I have written my Letter, i. e. just now ; I have read of Julius Cæsar, i. e. some time or other*. The first of these is called the *Preterperfect Definite*, and the other the *Preterperfect Indefinite*.

NOTE, 5. That *SHALL* and *WILL* by Mr Brightland are thus distinguished :

50 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue, -

In the First Person simply SHALL foretells :
 In WILL a Threat, or else a Promise dwells.
 SHALL in the Second and the Third does Threat ;
 WILL simply then foretells the Future Feat.

By Mr Turner thus :

WILL imports the *Will* or *Purpose* of the Person it is joined with ;
 SHALL implies the *Will* of another, who *promises* or *threatens* to do the
 Thing, or cause it to be done, *permits* it, *commands* it, or the like.

De Formatione Verborum.

Of the Formation of Verbs.

Quatuor sunt Terminationes Verbi, à quibus reliquæ omnes formantur ; sciz. the rest are formed ; namely, o

There are four Terminations of a Verb, from which all the rest are formed ; namely, o

o Præsentis, i Præteriti, um of the Supine, and re of the Infinitive, after this Manner :

Infinitive, after this Manner :

1. Ab o formantur am & em.

1. From o are formed am and em.

2. Ab i formantur ram, rim, ro, ssem, & sse.

2. From i, ram, rim, ro, ssem, and sse.

3. Ab um formantur u, us, & rus.

3. U, us, and rus, are formed from um.

4. A re formantur reliquæ omnes ; nempe, bam, bo, rem, a, e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do.

4. All other Parts from re do come ; as, bam, bo, rem, a, e, and i, ns, and dus, dum, do, and di.

In every complete Verb there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS, viz. the Present of the Indicative in O, the Preterite or Perfect in I, the first Supine in UM, and the Present of the Infinitive in RE. The first (which is therefore called the THEME or Root of the Verb) gives Origin to the whole Verb, either mediately or immediately. The Preterite, the first Supine, and the Present of the Infinitive come from it immediately, and all the rest from them ; except the Future of the Indicative in am, and the Present of the Subjunctive in em or am, which, by this Scheme, are also formed immediately from the Present in O.

It is to be noted, that the Preterites and Supines of the First Conjugation end commonly in avi and atum, of the Second in ui and itum, and of the Fourth in iui and itum. But the Third Conjugation cannot be reduced to any general Rule, and there are a great many exceptions in the other three, which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, till the Scholar is advanced to that Part of Grammar that treats particularly of them.

But the Present of the Infinitive, and all the other Parts of the Verb, are regularly formed after one fixed and uniform Manner.

In the foregoing Rules of Formation, I have, for the Ease of the Memory, put the Terminations instead of the Moods and Tenses ; but for the greater Plainness they may be thus expressed :

I. From

I. F
cative
Subjunctive
II.
the Pe
Infinitive
III.
fect an
IV.
dicative
second
Particip
Not
unto, e
and In
Not
by add
amanto
Not
Active,
Not
gation n
the Ind
changin
Not
Person
Not
and of
Not
Parts a
Gramm
found
found ;
the Aff
Not
of the
First Co
are Tw
furio, g
satio, fa
some c
tertio, d
fodio, fu
It is
ticular
bers, ar
bove, in
of the
ny othe
gate on
instead
co, or

I. From the *Present* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Future* of the *Indicative* of the *Third* and *Fourth* Conjugations in *am*; and the *Present* of the *Subjunctive* of the *First* in *em*, and of the other three in *am*.

II. From the *Perfect* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Plu-perfect* of it, the *Perfect*, *Plu-perfect*, and *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, and the *Perfect* of the *Infinitive*.

III. From the *First Supine* is formed the *Last Supine*, the *Participle Perfect* and *Future Active*.

IV. From the *Present* of the *Infinitive* are formed the *Imperfect* of the *Indicative*, the *Future* of the same when it ends in *BO*, (*viz.* in the first and second Conjugations.) the *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*, the *Imperative*, the *Participles Present* and *Future Passive*, and the *Gerunds*.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs in *IO* of the *Third* Conjugation retain *i* before *unt*, *unto*, *ebam*, *am*, *ens*, *endus*, *endum*; but lose it in the *Present* of the *Infinitive* and *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 2. That the *last Person Plur.* of the *Imperative* may be formed by adding *o* to the same *Person* of the *Present* of the *Indicative*; as, *Amant*, *amanto*; *docent*, *docento*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Passive Voice* is formed from the same *Tenses* of the *Active*, (except where *Sum* is used) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Passive* of the *Third* Conjugation may be formed by taking *s* from the *Second Person* of the *Present* of the *Indicative Active*; as, *legis*, *legi*; or when the Verb is *Deponent*, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i*; as, *Proficiscor*, *Proficisci*; *mori*, *mori*.

NOTE, 5. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Active*, and the *Second Person* of the *Indicative* and *Imperative Passive* in *re*, are always the same.

NOTE, 6. That the *Second Person Plural* of the *Present* of the *Indicative*, and of the *Imperative*, are the same in the *Passive Voice*.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the *Principal Parts* are wanting, these *Parts* are commonly wanting that come from them. For which Reason *Grammarians* give *Supines* to a great many Verbs, which yet are not to be found in any Author, because the *Participles* formed from them are found; and they suppose likewise all *Deponent Verbs* of old to have had the *Active Voice*, and consequently *Supines*, tho' now lost.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the *Second Conjugation* end in *eo*, and all Verbs of the *Fourth* in *io*, except *eo* and *quco*. There are eight Verbs in *eo* of the *First* Conjugation, *viz.* *beo*, *creo*, *screo*, *meo*, *calceo*, *laqueo*, *nauseo*, *nucleo*. There are Twenty-four in *io*, of the *First*, *viz.* *amplio*, *basio*, *brevio*, *consilio*, *crucio*, *furio*, *glacio*, *bio*, *lanio*, *luxurio*, *macio*, *nuncio*, *pio*, *propitio*, *radio*, *repudio*, *satio*, *saucio*, *socio*, *somnio*, *spolio*, *suavio*, or rather *suavior*, *vario*, *vitio*; with some other less common; as, *decurio*, *succenturio*, *fascio*, *retalio*, *strio*, *tertio*, &c. and Twelve of the *Third*, *viz.* *capio*, *facio*, *jacio*, *lacio*, *specio*, *fodio*, *fugio*, *cupio*, *rapio*, *sapio*, *pario*, *quatio*, with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, necessary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the respective Changes in the Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons, are made; they being obvious from the Examples above, in which I have distinguished them from the *Body* or *Essential Part* of the Verb by a *Division* or *Hyphen*. And perhaps this alone, without any other particular Rule, might be a sufficient Direction. For to conjugate one Verb by the Example of another, we have no more to do, but instead of the *Essential Part* of the one (which is all that stands before *o*, *eo*, or *io*, of the *Present* of the *Indicative*) to substitute the *Essential Part*

of the other, and then to add to it the additional Syllables it receives in Conjugation, as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to reckon all before *i* and *um* for the Body of the Verb, adding the usual Syllables to it, as in the *Active Voice* of *Lego*. 2. In Verbs in *io* we are to retain or omit the *i* as in *Note 1*.

There is yet another Way of the Formation of Verbs, differing only from the First Method in this, that what Parts according to it are formed from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the First or Second Person of the Present of the Indicative. But though this may be the more natural Way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

De Verbis Irregularibus.

IRREGULARIA Verba vulgò recensentur octo, viz. *Sum, Es, Quoco, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero, & Fio, cum Compositis.*

OF IRREGULAR Verbs.

THE IRREGULAR Verbs are commonly reckoned Eight, viz. *Sum, Es, Quoco, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero, and Fio, with their Compounds.*

S U M.

Sum, fui, esse, To be.

INDICATIVUS.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præsens.

*Sum, I am,
Es, Thou art,
Est: He is:
Sumus, We are,
Estis, Ye are,
Sunt. They are.*

*Sim, I may or can be,
Sis, Thou mayst or canst be,
Sit: He may or can be:
Simus, We may or can be,
Sitis, Ye may or can be,
Sint. They may or can be.*

Imperfectum.

*Eram, I was,
Eras, Thou wast,
Erat: He was:
Eramus, We were,
Eratis, Ye were,
Erant. They were.*

*Essem, I might, &c. be.
Esset, Thou mightest be,
Esset: He might be:
Essemus, We might be,
Essetis, Ye might be,
Essent. They might be.*

Perfectum.

*Fui, I have been,
Fuisti, Thou hast been,
Fuit: He hath been:
Fuimus, We have been,
Fuistis, Ye have been,
Fuerunt, They have been.*

*Fuerim, I may have been,
Fueris, Thou mayst have been,
Fuerit: He may have been:
Fuerimus, We may have been,
Fueritis, Ye may have been,
Fuerint. They may have been.*

v. -ere.

Plusquam-perfectum.

Fuer
Fuer
Fuer
Fuer
Fuer

Ero,
Eris,
Erit
Erim
Erit
Erim

I

Præsens.

Th
obsum
gated
for w

IND.

SUB.

IM
PO
(Sum),
etain
taken
are ye

res
np. I

rs. F

of P

4. P

Plusquam-perfectum.

Fueram,	<i>I had been,</i>	Fuissem,	<i>I might, &c. Have</i>	} <i>or had been.</i>
Fueras,	<i>Thou hadst been,</i>	Fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have</i>	
Fuerat :	<i>He had been :</i>	Fuisset :	<i>He might have</i>	
Fueramus,	<i>We had been,</i>	Fuissemus,	<i>We might have</i>	
Fueratis,	<i>Ye had been,</i>	Fuissetis,	<i>Ye might have</i>	
Fuerant.	<i>They had been.</i>	Fuissent.	<i>They might have</i>	

Futurum.

Ero,	<i>I shall or will be,</i>	Fuero,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
Eris,	<i>Thou shalt or wilt be,</i>	Fueris,	<i>Thou shalt have been,</i>
Erit :	<i>He shall or will be :</i>	Fuerit:	<i>He shall have been:</i>
Erimus,	<i>We shall or will be,</i>	Fuerimus	<i>We shall have been,</i>
Eritis,	<i>Ye shall or will be,</i>	Fueritis,	<i>Ye shall have been,</i>
Erunt.	<i>They shall or will be.</i>	Fuerint.	<i>They shall have been.</i>

IMPERATIVUS. INFINITIVUS.

Præsens.	{	Es vel	}	Be thou,	Præs. Esse.	To be.
		Esto,		Perf. Fuisse.	To have been.	
		Esto :		Let him be:	Fut. Futurum	To be about
		Este vel		esse vel fuisse	to be.	
		Estote,		Be ye,	PARTICIPIIUM.	
		Sunto.		Let them be.	Fut. Futurus.	About to be.

The Compounds of SUM are, *Adsum, absum, desum, intersum, præsum, obsum, subsum, supersum, insum, prosum, & possum.* The first eight are conjugated as the simple SUM : *Insu* wants the Preterite and its Descendents ; for we do not use *Infui, infuisti, infueram, &c.*

¶ **PROSUM**, *To do good*, has a *d* where **SUM** begins with *e* ; as,

IND. { *Pr.* Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est : pro-sumus, prod-estis, pro-
Im Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat : prod-eramus, &c. [sunt.

SUB. Im Prod-esset, prod-esses, prod-esset : prod-essemus, &c.

IMPERAT. Prod-esto, prod-este.

INFINIT. Præs. Prod-esse.

POSSUM should be *pot-sum*, (as being compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*), but for the better Sound *t* is changed into *s* before another *s*, and retained before any other Letter : And for the same Reason *s* is always taken away. *Possent* and *Pote* are contracted for *Potessem, Potesse*, which are yet to be found in some old Authors ; thus,

Possum, potui, posse, *To be able.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Possum,	potes,	potest :	possumus,	potestis,	possunt.
Imp. Poteram,	poteras,	poterat :	poteramus,	poteratis,	poterant.
Præs. Potui,	potuisti,	potuit :	potuimus,	potuistis,	{ potuerunt,
					v. -uere.
Imp. Potueram,	potueras,	potuerat :	potueramus,	potueratis,	potuerant.
Imp. Potero,	poteris,	poterit :	poterimus,	poteritis,	poterunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Possim,	possis,	possit :	possimus,	possitis,	possint.
<i>Imp.</i> Possem,	posses,	posset :	possemus,	possitis,	possent.
<i>Perf.</i> Potuerim,	potueris,	potuerit :	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint,
<i>Plus.</i> Potuisssem,	potuisses,	potuisset :	potuisssemus,	potuissetis,	potuissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Potuero,	potueris,	potuerit :	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Posse.*Perf.* Potuisse.

The rest wanting.

E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

INDICATIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Eo,	is,	it :	imus,	itis,	eunt.
<i>Im.</i> Ibam,	ibas,	ibat :	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
<i>Perf.</i> Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit :	ivimus,	ivistis,	{ iverunt, v. ivere.
<i>Plus.</i> Iveram,	iveras,	iverat :	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
<i>Fut.</i> Ibo,	ibis,	ibit :	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Eam,	eas,	eat :	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
<i>Imp.</i> Irem,	ires,	iret :	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
<i>Perf.</i> Iverim,	iveris,	iverit :	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
<i>Plus.</i> Ivisssem,	ivisses,	ivisset :	ivisssemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Ivero,	iveris,	iverit :	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

INFINITIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> { I,	ito :	{ ite,	eunto.	<i>Præs.</i> Ire.
{ ito,	{ itote,			<i>Perf.</i> Ivisse.
				<i>Fut.</i> Iturum esse v. fuisse.

PARTICIPIA.

SUPINA.

GERUNDIA.

<i>Præs.</i> Irens, Gen. euntis.	1 Itum.	Eundum,
<i>Fut.</i> Iturus, -a, -um.	2 Itu.	Eundi,
		Eundo.

NOTE, 1. That in general EO is a Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, 2. That of old Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperfect *ibam*, and Future in *ibo*, of which there are many examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*, and some in *Virgil* and *Horace*.After the same manner the Compounds of EO are conjugated, *v. Adeo, abeo, exeo, obo, redeo, subeo, pereco, coeo, inco, praeo, anteo, prodepreo, transeo*; *Adibam, adibo, adiens, adeuntis, adeundum, &c.* But *adi* is a regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

No,

NOTE, That in the Compounds *ivi, ivisti, &c.* are seldom used, but they are contracted into *ii, iisti*; as, *adii, adiisti*, and sometimes *adiisti*: So *adieram, adierim, &c.*

QUEO, *I can*, and NEQUEO, *I cannot*, are conjugated the same Way as EO; they only want the *Imperative* and the *Gerunds*; and the *Participles* are scarcely in use.

V O L O.

Volo, volui, velle, *To will, or be willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Volo, vis, vult: volumus, vultis, volunt.
Imp. Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat: -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit: -uimus, -uistis, { -uerunt,
Plus. Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat: -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Volam, voles, volet: volemus, voletis, volent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Velim, velis, velit: velimus, velitis, velint.
Imp. Vellem, velles, vellet: vellemus, velletis, vellent.
Perf. Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit: -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plus. Vol-uissim, -uisses, -uisset: -uissim, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Vol-uero, -ueris, -uerit: -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIIUM.

Præs. Velle. *Perf.* Voluisse. *Præs.* Volens.

The rest are wanting.

N O L O.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Nolo, non-vis, non-vult: nolumus, non-vultis, nolunt.
Imp. Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat: -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit: -uimus, -uistis, { -uerunt,
Plus. Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat: -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Nolum, noles, nolet: nolemus, noletis, nolent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Nolim, nolis, nolit: nolimus, nolitis, nolint.
Imp. Nollem, nolles, nollet: nollemus, nolletis, nolent.
Perf. Nol-uerim,

Perf. Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis -uerint.
Plus. Nol-uisssem, -uisses, -uisset : -uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

IMPERATIVUS. INFINITIVUS. PARTICIPIUM.

Pr. { Noli, { nolite, | *Pr.* Nolle. | *Præs.* Nolens.
 { Nolito : { nolitote. | *Per.* Noluisse. | *The rest wanting.*

M A L O.

Malo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Malo, mavis, mavult : malumus, mavultis, malunt.
Im. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat : -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit : -uimus, -uistis, { -uerunt,
 { v. -uere.
Plus. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat : -ueramus, -ueratis, uerant.
Fut. Malam, males, malet, &c. *This is scarcely in Use.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Malim, malis, malit : malimus, malitis, malint.
Imp. Mallem, malles, mallet : mallemus, malletis, mallent.
Perf. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plus. Mal-uisssem, -uisses, -uisset : -uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Malle.

Perf. Maluisse.

NOTE, That *Volo*, *Nolo*, and *Malo*, retain something of the Third Conjugation ; for *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted of *Volis*, *velit*, *volitis* ; and *o* is changed into *u*, for of old they said *Volt*, *voltis*.

Nolo is compounded of *Non volo*, and *Malo* of *Magis volo*.

F E R O.

VOX ACTIVA.

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring or suffer.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Fero, fers, fert : ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
Imp. Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat : ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant.
Perf. Tuli, tulisti, tulit : tulimus, tulistis, { tulerunt,
 { v. tulere.
Plus. Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat : tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant.
Fut. Feram, feres, feret : feremus, feretis, ferent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Feram, feras, ferat: feramus, feratis, ferant.
Imp. Ferrem, ferres, ferret: ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
Perf. Tulerim, tuleris, tulerit: tulerimus, tuleritis, tulerint.
Plus. Tulissem, tulisses, tulisset: tulissemus, tulissetis, tulissent.
Fut. Tulero, tuleris, tulerit: tulerimus, tuleritis, tulerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Ferre.
Perf. Tulisse.
Fut. Laturum esse
 vel fuisse.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. { Fer, fertor: { ferte, ferunto.
 { Fertor, fertote:

PARTICIPIA.

SUPINA.

GERUNDIA.

Præs. Ferens.
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um. { 1 Latum.
 { 2 Latu. { Ferendum,
 { Ferendi,
 { Ferendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Feror, latus, ferri.

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Feror, { ferris, fertur: ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
 { ferre,
Imp. Fer-ebat, { -ebaris, -ebatur: -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
 { -ebare,
Perf. Latus sum vel fui, latus es vel fuisti, &c.
Plus. Latus eram vel fueram, latus eras vel fueras, &c.
Fut. Ferar, { fereris, feretur: feremur, feremini, ferentur.
 { ferere,

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Ferar, { feraris, feratur: feramur, feramini, ferantur.
 { ferare,
Imp. Ferrer, { ferreris, ferretur: ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
 { ferrere,
Perf. Latus sim vel fuerim, latus sis vel fueris, &c.
Plus. Latus essem vel fuisset, latus esses vel fuisses, &c.
Fut. Latus fuero, latus fueris, &c.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. { Ferre, fertor: ferimini, feruntor,
 { fertor,

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

Præs. Ferri.
Perf. Latum esse vel fuisse.
Fut. Latum iri.
Perf. Latum, -a, -um.
Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.

NOTE, That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *Fers, fert, fertis, ferio, ferite, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor*; being contracted of *Feris, ferit, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur, and feritor*.

Also *Fer* is contracted of *fere*; which, in like Manner, has happened to the Imperatives of *Dico, duco, facio*, they having *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dice, duce, face*.

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the same Way as the Simple; as, *Affero, attuli, allatum*; *Aufero, abstuli, ablatum*; *Differo, distuli, dilatatum*; *Confero, contuli, collatum*; *Infero, intuli, illatum*; *Offero, obtuli, oblatum*; *Effero, extuli, elatum*; So *Circumfero, perfero, transfero, defero, profero, antefero, praefero*.

F I O.

Fio, factus, fieri, To be made, or to become.

INDICATIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i>	<i>Fio,</i>	<i>fis,</i>	<i>fit:</i>	<i>simus,</i>	<i>fitis,</i>	<i>fiunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Fiebam,</i>	<i>fiebas,</i>	<i>fiebat:</i>	<i>fiebamus,</i>	<i>fiebatis,</i>	<i>fiebant.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Factus sum vel fui, factus es vel fuisti, &c.</i>					
<i>Plus.</i>	<i>Factus eram vel fueram, factus eras vel fueras, &c.</i>					
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Fiam,</i>	<i>fies,</i>	<i>fiet:</i>	<i>fiemus,</i>	<i>fietis,</i>	<i>fient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i>	<i>Fiam,</i>	<i>fias,</i>	<i>fiat:</i>	<i>fiamus,</i>	<i>fiatis,</i>	<i>fiant.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Fierem,</i>	<i>fieres,</i>	<i>fieret:</i>	<i>fieremus,</i>	<i>fieretis,</i>	<i>fierent.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Factus sim vel fuerim, factus sis vel fueris, &c.</i>					
<i>Plus.</i>	<i>Factus essem vel fuisset, factus esses vel fuisset, &c.</i>					
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Factus fuero, factus fueris, &c.</i>					

IMPERATIVUS.

INFINITIVUS.

<i>Pr.</i>	{ <i>Fi*, fito:</i>	{ <i>fitte, fiunto.</i>
	{ <i>Fito,</i>	{ <i>fitote,</i>

<i>Præs.</i>	<i>Fieri.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Factum esse v. fuisse.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Factum iri.</i>

PARTICIPIA.

SUPINUM.

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Factus,</i>	<i>-a,</i>	<i>-um.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Faciendus,</i>	<i>-a,</i>	<i>-um.</i>

Factu.

* Tho' *Fi* is rejected by some Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it a Place here, not only because it is to be found in *Plautus*, but also in *Horace, Lib. 2. Sat. 5. ver. 38. Fi cognitor ipse*, according to the best MSS and Editions.

NOTE, f.

NOTE, 1. That *Fio* is the Passive of *Facio*, To make, (which is regular) instead of *Facior*, which is not in use: Yet the compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i*, are regular; as *afficio*, *affectus*, *affici*; *perficio*, *perfectus*, *perfici*.

NOTE, 2. That the Compounds of *facio*, with Verbs, Nouns, or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperat. Act. *fac*. and their Passive Form (when used) *fio*; as, *Calefacio*, *lucrifacio*, *benefacio*; *calefac*, *calefio*, &c. But these compounded with a Preposition, change the *a* into *i*, and have *fice* and *ficio*. There are some compounded of *Facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the first Conjugation; as, *magnifico*, *significo*.

To the Irregular Verbs may be reduced *EDO*, to eat, which in some of its Parts falls in with the Verb *Sum*; thus,

IND. Præs. Edo,	es,	est:	estis,	essent.
SUB. Imp. Effem,	esses,	esset:	essemus,	essetis,
IMP. Præs. Es vel esto,	este vel estote.		INFIN. Esse.	

Likewise its Compounds, *Comedo*, *comes*, *comest*, &c. and *Exedo*, *exes*, *exest*, &c. But all these may likewise be regularly conjugated, *Edo*, *edis*, *edit*, &c. *Ederem*, *ederes*, *ederet*, &c.

OF DEFECTIVE Verbs.

THO' some of the Irregular Verbs already mentioned want some of their Parts, and upon that account may be called also *Defective Verbs*, yet by *DEFECTIVE Verbs* here we chiefly understand such as want considerable branches, or are used only in few *Tenses* and *Persons*. We shall set down these that most frequently occur.

I. AIO, *I say*; INQUAM, *I say*; FOREM, *I should be*; AUSIM, *I dare*; FAXIM, *I'll see to it*, or *I will do it*; AVE, and SALVE, *God save you*, *Hail*, *Good morrow*; CEDO, *Tell*, or *give me*; QUÆSO, *I pray*.

IND. { Præs. Aio,	ais,	ait:	aiunt.
Imp. Ai-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant:
Perf.	aiisti,		
SUB. Præs.	aias,	aiat:	aiatis, aiant.
IMPERAT. ai.		[PARTICIP. Præs. aiens.]	

INDIC. { Præs. Inquam, inquis, inquit:	inquimus, inquitis, inquirunt.
Imp.	inquirebat: inquirebant.
Perf.	inquisti,
Fut.	inquies, inquiet:
IMPERAT. inque, -ito.	
PARTICIP. Præs. inquiens.	

SUB. { Imp. } Forem, fores, foret:	foremus, foretis, forent.
{ Plus. }	

INF. Fore, to be, or to be about to be, the same with *futurum esse*.

SUB. { Præs. Ausim, ausis, ausit:	faxint.
{ Perf. Faxim, faxis, faxit:	faxitis, faxint.
{ Fut. Faxo, faxis, faxit:	

NOTE, That *faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

IMPERAT. { Ave,	avete,	} INF. {	avere.	
{ Aveto,	avetote.		}	salvere.
{ Salve,	salvete,			
{ Salveto,	salvetote.			
	Cedo, cedite.			
IND. Præs. Quæso,	quæsumus.			

60 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

II. These three Verbs, ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the *Preterite* Tense, and what is formed from it, and therefore are by some called **PRETERITIVE** Verbs; thus,

Odi, oderam, oderim, odissem, odero, odisse.
 Memini, memineram, meminere, meminisse, meminero, meminisse.
 Cœpi, cœperam, cœperim, cœpissim, cœpero, cœpisse.

But under these they comprehend also the Signification of the other Tenses; as, *Memini*, I remember, or I have remembered: *Memineram*, I remembred, or I had remembred, &c. So *Odi*, I hate, or I have hated; *Cœpi*, I begin, or I have begun. Tho' I am not fully satisfied as to this last, for I do not know any Example where *Cœpi* doth clearly signify the present Tense.

Memini hath also the Imperative, *Memento*, Remember thou; *Memento*, Remember ye. Some add *Meminens*, Remembring, which is scarcely to be imitated.

To these some add *NOVI*, because it frequently hath the Signification of the Present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, tho' it comes from *Noſco*, which is complete.

NOTE, 1. That *Odiens* is to be found in *Petronius*; *Odiatur* in *Seneca*; *Cœpio* in *Plautus* and *Terence*. See *Voss. Analog. lib. III. cap. 39*.

NOTE, 2. That the Participles *Cœptus* and *Osus*, with its Compounds, *Perosus*, *Exosus*, are in use among the best Authors; but *Perodi* and *Exodi* are not.

III. *Faris*, To speak, wants the first Person of the *Pres. Indic.* and perhaps the whole *Present* of the *Subjunctive*, for we do not say *For* or *Fer*, and rarely *Feris*, *fetur*, &c. So likewise *Daris* and *Deris*, but not *Dor* or *Der*, To be given. The Compounds of the first, as, *Effer*, *affor*, are rare; but the Compounds of the other, as, *Addor*, *Reddor*, are common.

IV. Most of the other defective Verbs are but single Words, and rarely to be found but among Poets; as, *Infir*, he begins; *Defir*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction *Si*, as, *is for Si vis*, If thou wilt; *Sultis*, for *Si vultis*, If ye will; *Sodes*, for *Si audes*, If thou dares.

Of IMPERSONAL Verbs.

These are also a kind of *Defective* Verbs, which for the most part are used only in the *Third Person Sing.* They have the Sign *IT* before them in English; as, *Pœnitet*, It repents; *Placet*, It pleases: And are thus conjugated.

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plusquamp.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
IND. <i>Pœnitet</i> ,	<i>pœnitebat</i> ,	<i>pœnituit</i> ,	<i>pœnituerat</i> ,	<i>pœnitebit</i> .	
SUB. <i>Pœniteat</i> ,	<i>pœniteret</i> ,	<i>pœnituerit</i> ,	<i>pœnituisset</i> ,	<i>pœnituerit</i> .	
INF. <i>Pœnitere</i> ,		<i>pœnituisse</i> .			

Most Verbs may be used impersonally in the *Passive Voice*, especially such as otherwise have no *Passive*; as,

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plusquamp.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
Ind. <i>Pugnatur</i> ,	<i>pugnabatur</i> ,	<i>pugnatum</i>	{ <i>est</i> , <i>fuit</i> , -atum	{ <i>erat</i> , <i>fuerat</i> , -atum	<i>pugnabitur</i> .
Sub. <i>pugnetur</i> ,	<i>pugnaretur</i> ,	<i>pugnatum</i>	{ <i>sit</i> , <i>fuerit</i> , -atum	{ <i>esset</i> , <i>fuisset</i> , -atum	<i>fuerit</i> .
Inf. <i>Pugnari</i> ,		<i>pugnatum</i>	{ <i>esse</i> , <i>fuisse</i> , -atum		<i>pugnatum iri</i> .

NOTE, I

Part II. Chap. IV. of Participle. 61

NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any Person or Number, by putting that which stands before other Verbs, after the Impersonals, in the Cases which they govern: as, *pœnitēt me, te, illum*, I repent, thou repentest, he repenteth, instead of *Ego pœniteo*, &c. which is scarcely Latin. *Placet mihi, tibi, illi*, It pleases me, thee, him; or, I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c.

NOTE, 2. That Impersonals are not used in the Imperative, but instead of it we take the Subjunctive.

NOTE, 3. That Impersonal Verbs are very often used personally, especially in the Plural Number; as, *Accidit, Contingit, Evenit, Pertinet, Decet, Dolet, Livet, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Praestat*, &c. For we say, *Tu mihi sola places*; *Nalli noceo*; *Multa homini accidunt, contingunt, eveniunt*; *Parvum parva decet*, &c. But it is to be remarked, that they are generally Impersonal, when an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood follows; for tho' I can say, *Tu places mihi*, yet I cannot say, *Si places audire*, but *si placet tibi audire*. Again, we cannot say, *Ego contigi esse domi*, but *Me contigit esse domi*, or *Mihi contigit esse domi*. Likewise *Evenit illum mori*, or *Ut ille moreretur*, but not, *Ille evenit mori*.

[I shall not here inquire what is the Word understood to Impersonal Verbs, whether it is a Noun of the like Signification; as, *Pugna pugnatur*, or the Word *Res* or *Negotium*, or the Infinitive Mood. Tho' I incline to think that any one of these will not answer to them all, but that there are some to which the first, to others the second, and to others the third, may be most fitly understood, as the Nature of the Verb and good Sense shall direct us. This we are sure of, that the Word understood can never be a Person properly so called, but a Thing; for which Reason, and the Want of the two primary Persons, viz. the first and second, they are called Impersonal, tho' some are much offended with the Name.]

C A P. IV.

De Participio.

TRia sunt præcipuè consideranda in Participio, viz. *Tempus, Significatio, & Declinatio*.

I. Tempora Participiorum sunt Tria, *Præsens, Præteritum, & Futurum*.

Participia	{	Præs.	} Temp. de- clinant in	ns.
		Pret.		tus, sus, xus.
		Fut.		rus, dus.

II. Significatio Participiorum est vel *Activa*, vel *Passiva*, vel *Neutra*, ad modum verborum a quibus descendunt.

C H A P. IV.

Of Participle.

THere are three Things especially to be considered in a Participle, viz. *Time, Signification, and Declension*.

I. The Tenses of Participles are three, the Present, Preterite, and Future.

Particip. of the	{	Præs.	} Tense end in	ns.
		Pret.		tus, sus, xus.
		Fut.		rus, dus.

II. The Signification of Participles is either *Active* or *Passive*, or *Neuter*, after the Manner of the Verbs from which they come.

Participia

Participia { in *ns* & *rus* plerumque
sunt *Activa*.
in *dus* semper *Passiva*.
in *tus, sus, xus*, plerum-
que sunt *Passiva*, inter-
dum verò *Activa*, vel
etiam *Communia*.

Participles { in *ns* and *rus* are general-
ly *Active*.
in *dus* always *Passive*.
in *tus, sus, xus*, are ge-
nerally *Passive*, some-
times *Active*, or also
Common.

III. Omnia Participia sunt
Adjectiva : quæ definunt in *ns*
sunt *Tertiæ Declinationis*, re-
liqua autem omnia *Primæ &*
Secundæ.

III. All Participles are Ad-
jectives : These which end in
ns, are of the Third Declen-
sion, but all the rest are of the
First and Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a Kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, which in its Signification always imports some Time.

It is so called, because it *partakes* of a Noun and a Verb, having Genders and Cases from the one, Time and Signification from the other, and Number from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [See Chap. IX.] have two Participles, one of the Present Time, ending in *ns*; as, *Amans*, Loving: And another of the Future, ending in *rus*; as, *Amaturus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewise two Participles, one of the Preterite, ending in *tus, sus*, or *xus*; as, *Amatus*, Loved; *Visus*, Seen; *Flexus*, Bowed; (to which add one in *uus*, viz. *Mortuus*, Dead :) And another of the Future, ending in *dus*; as, *Amandus*, To be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two Participles, as the Active; as, *Sedens*, Sitting; *Sessurus*, About to sit.

4. ACTIVE INTRANSITIVE Verbs have frequently three Participles, as, *Carens*, Wanting; *Cariturus*, About to want; *Carendus*, To be wanted; *Dolens*, Grieving; *Doliturus*, About to grieve; *Dolendus*, To be grieved; And sometimes four; as, *Vigilans*, Watching; *Vigilaturus*, About to watch; *Vigilatus*, Watched; *Vigilandus*, To be watched.

5. DEPONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four Participles; as, *Loquens*, Speaking; *Locuturus*, About to speak; *Locutus*, Having spoken; *Loquendus*, To be spoken; *Dignans*, Vouchsafing; *Dignaturus*, About to vouchsafe; *Dignatus*, Having vouchsafed, or being vouchsafed; *Dignandus*, To be vouchsafed.

NOTE, 1. That in some Deponent Verbs the Participle Perfect hath both an Active and Passive Signification, tho' that of the Verb itself is only Active; as, *Testatus*, Having testified, or being testified. So *Mentitus*, *Meditatus*, *Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That it is essential to a Participle, I. That it come immediately from a Verb. II. That in its Signification it also include Time. Therefore, *Tunicatus*, Coated; *Larvatus*, Masked; and such like, are not Participles, because they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs. And, *Ignarus*, Ignorant; *Elegans*, Neat; *Circumspectus*, Circumspect; *Tacitus*, Silent; *Falsus*, False; *Profusus*, Prodigal, &c. are not Participles, because they do not signify Time.

Then

Part II. Chap. V. of Adverb. 63

There are a Kind of Adjective Nouns ending in *UNDUS*, which approach very near to the Nature of *Participles*, such as, *Errabundus*, *Ludibundus*, *Populabundus*. They are formed from the *Imperf.* of the *Indic.* and their Signification is much the same with the *Participle* of the *Present* Time: only they signify *Abundance*, or a great deal of the *Action*, according to *A. Gellius*, lib. 11. cap. 15. or according to others, they signify the same with the *Participles* of *Frequentative* Verbs, when these are not in use. See *Gronovius* on *Gellius*, as above cited.

APPENDIX, of Gerunds and Supines.

GERUNDS and *SUPINES* (which, because of their near Relation to Verbs, are by some not improperly called *Participial* Words) are a Sort of *Substantive* Nouns expressing the *Action* of the Verb in general, or in the *Abstract*. *GERUNDS* are *Substantives* of the second Declension, and complete in all their Cases except the *Vocative*. *SUPINES* are *Substantives* of the fourth Declension, having only two Cases, the *Accusative* in *UM*, which makes the *First* *Supine*, and the *Ablative* in *U*, which makes the *Second*.

[*Vossius*, Lib. 8. Cap. 54. thinks that the Last *Supine* may sometimes be a *Dative*; as, *Durum tactu, i. e. tactui*; for the *Datives* of the fourth Declension of o'd ended in *u*. Also, Lib. 7. Cap. 8. he takes Notice, that though these *Supines* have sometimes other Cases, (as, *irrisui esse*) yet they are only reckoned *Supines* by *Grammarians*, when the *First* come after Verbs of *Motion*, and the *Second* after *Adjective* Nouns: Thus, *dignus irrisu* is a *Supine* (according to them) *Non sine irrisu audientium*, is not.]

De Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.

C A P. V.

De Adverbio.

IN ADVERBIO potissimum spectanda est ejus Significatio.

Adverbiorum Significationes variae sunt: earum verò præcipuæ ad sequentia capita revocari possunt.

Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

C H A P. V.

Of Adverb.

IN an Adverb is chiefly to be considered its Signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are various: But the chief of them may be reduced to the following Heads

ADVERB is an indeclinable Part of Speech, which being joined to a Noun, Verb, or other Adverb, expresses some Circumstance, Quality, or Manner of their Signification.

I. Adverbs denoting **CIRCUMSTANCE**, are chiefly those of *Place*, *Time*, and *Order*.

1. Adverbs

1. Adverbs of PLACE are fivefold,
viz. Adverbs signifying Motion,

UBI ? Where ?
Hic, Here.
Illic, } There.
Isthic,
Ibi,
Intus, Within.
Foris, Without.
Ubique, Every where.
Nusquam, No where.
Alicubi, Some where.
Alibi, Else where.
Ubiuis, Any where.
Ibidem, In the same Place.

(or Rest) (1) in a Place.

Quo, Whither ?
Huc, Hither.
Isthuc, } Thither.
Intro, To within.
Foras, To without.
Eo, To that Place.
Alio, To another Place.
Aliquo, To some Place.
Eodem, To the same Place.

(2) to a Place.

Quorsum ? Whitherward ?
Versus, Towards.
Horsum, Hitherward.
Illorsum, Thitherward.
Sursum, Upward.
Deorsum, Downward.
Antrorsum, Forward.
Retrosum, Backward.
Dextrorsum, To the right Hand.
Sinistrorsum, To the left Hand.

(3) towards a Place.

Unde ? From whence ?
Hinc, From hence.
Illinc, } From thence.
Istinc,
Inde,
Aliunde, From else where.
Alicunde, From some Place.
Sicunde, If from any Place.
Utrinque, On both Sides.
Superne, From above.
Inferne, From below.
Cœlitus, From Heaven.
Funditus, From the Ground.

(4) from a Place.

Qua ? Which Way ?
Hac, This Way.
Illac, } That Way.
Istac,
Alia, Another Way.

(5) through
or by a Place.

2. Adverbs of TIME are threefold
viz. such as signify,

(1) Being in Time, either
Nunc, Now.
Hodie, To-day.
Tunc, } Then.
Tum,
Heri, Yesterday.
Dudum, } Heretofore.
Pridem,
Pridie, The Day before.
Nudius tertius, Three Days ago.
Nuper, Lately.
JAM JAM, Presently.
Mox, Immediately.
Statim, By and by.
Protinus, Instantly.
Illico, Straightway.
CRAS, To-morrow.
Postridie, The Day after.
Perendie, Two Days hence.
Nondum, Not yet.
QUANDO ? When ?
Aliquando, } Sometimes
Nonnunquam,
Interdum,
Semper, Ever.
Nunquam, Never.
Interim, In the mean Time.
Quotidie, Daily.

(2) Continuance of Time.

Diu, Long.
Quamdiu ? How long ?
Tamdiu, So long.
Jamdiu, } Long ago.
Jamdudum,
Jampridem.

(3) Vicissitude or Repetition of Time.

QUOTIES ? How often ?
Sæpe, Often.
Raro, Seldom.
Toties, So often.
Aliquoties, For several times.
Vicissim, } By Turns.
Alternatim,
Rursus, } Again.
Iterum,
Sæinde, } Ever and anon.
Identidem,
SEMEL, Once.
Bis, Twice.
Ter, Thrice.
Quater, Four times, &c.

2. Definite,
or in
Number.

3. Adverbs

Inde,
Deinde,
Dehinc,
Porro,
II. T.
Absolut

ABSOLUTE, denoting,

denoting,

Inde,	Then.	Deinceps, So forth.	Primo, -um, First.
Deinde,	Thereafter.	Denuo, Of-new.	Secundo, -um, Secondly.
Dehinc,	Henceforth.	Denique, Finally.	Tertio, -um, Thirdly.
Porro,	Moreover.	Postremo, Lastly.	Quarto, -um, Fourthly.

II. The other *Adverbs* expressing *QUALITY, MANNER, &c.* are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

1. *QUALITY* simply ; *as*, Bene, well ; male, ill ; fortiter, bravely : And innumerable others that come from *Adjective Nouns* or *Participles*.
2. *CERTAINTY* ; *as*, Profectò, certè, sanè, planè, nã, utique, ita, etiam, truly, verily, yes ; quidni, why not ? omnino, certainly.
3. *CONTINGENCE* ; *as*, Fortè, forsan, fortassis, fors, happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.
4. *NEGATION* ; *as*, Non, hand, not ; nequaquam, not at all ; neutiquam, by no means ; minime, nothing less.
5. *PROHIBITION* ; *as*, Ne, not.
6. *SWEARING* ; *as*, Hercle, pol, edepol, mecastor, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.
7. *EXPLAINING* ; *as*, Utpote, videlicet, scilicet, nimirum, nempe, to wit, namely.
8. *SEPARATION* ; *as*, Scorsum, apart ; separatim, separately ; sigillatim, one by one ; viritim, Man by Man ; oppidatim, Town by Town, &c.
9. *JOINING TOGETHER* ; *as*, Simul, unà, pariter, together ; generaliter, generally ; universaliter, universally ; plerumque, for the most part.
10. *INDICATION* or *POINTING* out ; *as*, En, ecce, lo, behold.
11. *INTERROGATION* ; *as*, Cur, quare, quamobrem, why, wherefore ? num, an, whether ? quomodo, qui, how ? To which add, Ubi, quò, quorum, unde, quà, quando, quamdiu, quoties.
12. *EXCESS* ; *as*, Valde, maximè, magnopere, summo opere, admodum, oppidò, perquam, longè, very, much, exceedingly ; nimis, nimium, too much ; prorsus, penitus, omnino, altogether, wholly ; magis, more ; meliùs, better ; pejùs, worse ; fortiùs, more bravely : And optimè, best ; pessimè, worst ; fortissimè, most bravely ; and innumerable others of the *Comparative* and *Superlative* Degrees.
13. *DEFECT* ; *as*, Ferme, ferè, prope, propemodum, penè, almost ; parum, little ; paullo, paullulum, very little.
14. *PREFERENCE* ; *as*, Potiùs, satiùs, rather ; potissimùm, præcipuè, præsertim, chiefly, especially ; imò, yes, nay, nay rather.
15. *LIKENESS* or *EQUALITY* ; *as*, Ita, sic, adeo, so ; ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quasi, as, as if ; quemadmodum, even as ; satis, enough ; itidem, in like Manner.
16. *UNLIKENESS* or *INEQUALITY* ; *as*, Aliter, secus, otherwise ; alioqui or alioquin, else ; nedum, much more or much less.
17. *ABATEMENT* ; *as*, Sensim, paullatim, pedetentim, by degrees, piece-meal ; vix, scarcely ; ægre, hardly, with difficulty.
18. *EXCLUSION* ; *as*, Tantùm, solum, modò, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum, only.

NOTE, 1. That ADVERBS seem originally to have been contrived to express compendiously in one Word what must otherwise have required two or more; as *Sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *una vice*; *bis*, for *duabus vicibus*; *Hercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing else but Adjective Nouns or Pronouns, having the Preposition and Substantive understood; as, *quo*, *eo*, *eodem*; for *ad quæ*, *ea*, *eodem* [*locæ*], or *ad eum*, *eidem*, [*locum*]; for of old these Datives ended in *o*. Thus, *qua*, *hac*, *illa*, &c. are plain Adjectives in the *Ab. sing. femin.* the Word *via*, a Way, and *in*, being understood. Many of them are Compounds; as, *quomodo*, i. e. *quo modo*; *quemadmodum*, i. e. *ad quem modum*; *quomodo*, i. e. *ob quam rem*; *quare*, i. e. [*pro*] *quæ re*; *quorsum*, i. e. *versus quem* [*locum*]; *scilicet*, i. e. *scire licet*; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre licet*; *illicet*, i. e. *ire licet*; *illico*, i. e. *in loco*; *magnopere*, i. e. *magno opere*; *nimirum*, i. e. *ni* [*est*] *inrum*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That of Adverbs of Place, these of the First Kind answer to the Question *ubi*; the Second to *quo*? the Third to *quorsum*? the Fourth to *unde*? and the Fifth to *qua*? To which might be added a Sixth, *quousque*, How far; answered by *Usque*, until; *Hucusque*, hitherto; *Eousque*, so far; *Hætenus*, hitherto, thus far; *Eatenus*, so far as; *Quadantenus*, to some Measure. But these are equally applied to Place and Time.

NOTE, 3. That Adverbs of Time of the First Kind answer to *quando* of the Second to *quamdiu* and *quamdiudum* or *quamdiu*? of the Third to *quoties*?

NOTE, 4. That Adverbs of Quality generally answer to the Question *quomodo*?

NOTE, 5. That some Adverbs of Time, Place, and Order, are frequently used the one for the other; as, *Ubi*, where and when; *inde*, from that Place from that Time, thereafter, next; *hætenus*, thus far, with respect to Place, Time, or Order, &c. Other Adverbs also may be classed under different Heads.

NOTE, 6. That some Adverbs of Time are either past, present, or future; as *Jam*, already, now, by and by; *Olim*, long ago, some time hereafter.

NOTE, 7. That Interrogative Adverbs of Time and Place, doubled or with the Adjection *cunque*, answer to the English Adjection *soever*; as, *ubique*, *ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quoquo*, or *quocunque*, whithersoever, &c. And the same holds also in other Interrogative Words; as, *quisquis*, or *quicunque*, whosoever; *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how great soever; *qualisqualis*, or *qualiscunque*, of what Kind or Quality soever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however, or howsoever &c.

C A P. VI.

De Prepositione.

I. PRæpositiones quæ regunt Accusativum sunt viginti octo, viz.

Ad,	To.
Apud,	At.
Ante,	Before.

C H A P. VI.

Of Preposition.

I. THE Prepositions which govern the Accusative are twenty-eight, viz.

Adversus,	} Against.
Adversum,	
Contra,	

Cis,
Citra
Circæ
Circu
Erga
Extra
Inter
Intra
Infra
Juxta
Ob,

II.
gunt
cim, r
A,
Ab,
Abs,
Abiqu
Cum,
Clam,

Coran

III.
Accus
tivum
In,
Sub,

A PR
one Sub
Not
unto;
among
those g
of then
first fou
which
patrem;
Besid
Use aris
Nouns
a peculi

Part II. Chap. VI. of Preposition. 67

Cis,	} On this Side.	Propter,	For, hard by.
Citra,		Per,	By, through.
Circa,	} About.	Præter,	Besides, except.
Circum,		Penes,	In the Power of.
Erga,	Towards.	Post,	After.
Extra,	Without.	Pone,	Behind.
Inter,	Between, among.	Secus,	By, along.
Intra,	Within.	Secundum,	According to.
Infra,	Beneath.	Supra,	Above.
Juxta,	Nigh to.	Trans,	On the farther side.
Ob,	For.	Ultra,	Beyond.

II. Præpositiones quæ regunt Ablativum sunt quindecim, nempe,

A,	} From.	
Ab,		
Abs,		
Absque,	Without.	
Cum,	With.	
Clam,	Without the Knowledge of.	
Coram,	Before.	

II. The Prepositions which govern the Ablative, are Fifteen, viz.

De,	Of, concerning.
E,	} Of, out of.
Ex,	
Pro,	For.
Præ,	Before.
Palam,	With the Knowledge of.
Sine,	Without.
Tenus,	Up to.

III. Hæ quatuor interdum Accusativum, interdum Ablativum regunt.

In,	In, into.
Sub,	Under.

III. These four govern sometimes the Accusative, and sometimes the Ablative.

Super,	Above.
Subter,	Beneath.

A PREPOSITION is an indeclinable Word, shewing the Relation of one Substantive Noun to another.

NOTE, That Pone and Secus rarely occur : And Prope, nigh ; Usque, unto ; Circiter, about ; Versus, towards ; which are commonly reckoned among the Prepositions governing the Accusative ; and Procul, far, among those governing the Ablative, are Adverbs ; and do not govern a Case of themselves, but by the Preposition ad, which is understood to the first four, and a or ab to the last. To which perhaps may be added Clam, which is joined very frequently with the Accusative ; as Clam patre, or patrem ; a being understood to the one, and quod ad to the other.

Besides the separate Use of these PREPOSITIONS, there is another Use arises from them, namely, their being put before a vast Number of Nouns and Verbs in Composition, which creates a great Variety, and gives a peculiar Elegance and Beauty to the Latin Tongue.

There are five or six Syllables, viz. AM, DI or DIS, RE, SE, CON which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in *compound Words*: However they generally add something to the Signification of the Words with which they are compounded; thus:

Am,	}	signifies	{	round about,	}	as,	ambio,	to surround.
Di,				afunder,			divello,	to pull afunder.
Dis,				again,			distraho,	to draw afunder.
Re,				aside or apart,			relego,	to read again.
Se,				together,			sepono,	to lay aside.
Con,							concreasco,	to grow together.

C H A P. VII. Of Interjection.

AN INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word thrown into Discourse, to signify some Passion or Emotion of the Mind.

- Some of them express,
1. JOY; as, Evax, hey, brave, io.
 2. GRIEF; as, Ah, hei, heu, cheu, ah, alas, woes me.
 3. WONDER; as, Papæ, O strange; Vah, hab.
 4. PRAISE; as, Euge, well done.
 5. AVERSION; as, Apage, away, begone, fy, tush.
 6. EXCLAIMING; as, Oh, proh, O.
 7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, Atat, ha, aha.
 8. IMPRECATION; as, Væ, wo, pox on't.
 9. LAUGHTER; as, Ha, ha, he.
 10. SILENCING; as, Au, 'st, pax, silence, hush, 'st.
 11. CALLING; as, Eho, io, ho, so, ho, soho, O.
 12. DERISION; as, Hui, away with.
 13. ATTENTION; as, Hem, hab.

NOTE, 1. That the same *Interjection* denotes sometimes one Passion and sometimes another; as, *Vah*, which is used to express *Joy*, and *Sorrow*, and *Wonder*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That some of them are natural Sounds common to all Languages.

NOTE, 3. That *Nouns* are used sometimes for *Interjections*; as, *Molum!* With a Pox! With a Mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! *Fy, fy!* *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the Villainy!

INTERJECTION is a compendious Way of expressing a whole Sentence in one Word, and used only to represent the Passions and Emotions of the Soul: that the Shortness of the one might the sooner express the Suddenness and Quickness of the other.

C H A P. VIII. Of Conjunction.

A CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable Word that joins Sentences together; and thereby shews their Dependence upon one another.

Part II. Chap. VIII. of Conjunction. 69

Of these some are called,

1. **COPULATIVE** ; as, Et, ac, atque, que, and ; etiam, quoque, item, also ; cum, tum, both, and. Also their contraries, Nec, neque, neu, neve, neither, nor.
2. **DISJUNCTIVE** ; as, Aut, ve, vel, seu, five, either, or.
3. **CONCESSIVE** ; as, Etſi, etiamſi, tametſi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, tho', altho', albeit.
4. **ADVERSATIVE** ; as, Sed, verum, autem, at, aſt, atqui, but ; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumenimvero, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.
5. **CAUSAL** ; as, Nam, namque, enim, for ; quia, quippe, quoniam, becauſe ; quod, that, becauſe.
6. **ILLATIVE or RATIONAL** ; as, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, therefore ; quapropter, quocirca, wherefore ; proinde, therefore ; cum, quum, ſeeing, ſince ; quandoquidem, forasmuch as.
7. **FINAL or PERFECTIVE** ; as, Ut, uti, that, to the end that.
8. **CONDITIONAL** ; as, Si, ſin, if ; dum, modo, dummodo, provided, upon Condition that ; ſiquidem, if indeed.
9. **EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE** ; as, Ni, niſi, unleſs, except.
10. **DIMINUTIVE** ; as, Saltem, certè, at leaſt.
11. **SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE** ; as, An, anne, num, whether ; ne, annon, whether, not ; necne, or not.
12. **EXPLETIVE** ; as, Autem, vero, now, truly ; quidem, equidem, indeed.
13. **ORDINATIVE** ; as, Deinde, thereafter ; denique, finally ; inſuper, moreover ; cæterum, moreover, but, however.
14. **DECLARATIVE** ; as, Videlicet, ſcilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c. to wit, namely.

NOTE, 1. That the ſame Words, as they are taken in different Views, are both *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions* ; as, An, anne, &c. are *Suſpenſive Conjunctions* and *Interrogative Adverbs*. The ſame may be ſaid of the *Ordinative* and *Declarative Conjunctions*, which under another View may be ranked under *Adverbs of Order and Explaining*. So likewiſe *Utinam*, which is commonly called an *Adverb of Wiſhing*, when more narrowly conſidered, is nothing elſe but the *Conjunction Uti* [that] with the Syllable *nam* added to it, and *opto* [I wiſh] underſtood ; as, *Utinam, adſuiſſes ; Ut te Deus male perdat* ; ſupple *Opto*. But ſince both of them are *indeclinable*, there is no great Need of being very nice in diſtinguiſhing them.

NOTE, 2. That other Parts of Speech compounded together, ſupply the Place of *Conjunctions* ; as, *Poſtea*, afterwards ; *præterea*, moreover ; *propterea*, becauſe, &c. Which are made up of the *Prepoſitions poſt, præter, and propter*, with *ea* the Pronoun.

NOTE, 3. That ſome *Conjunctions*, according to their natural ORDER, ſtand firſt in a Sentence ; as, *Et, aut, nec, ſi, &c.* Some, contrary to their natural Order, ſtand in the ſecond Place, viz. *autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim* : And ſome may indifferently be put either firſt or ſecond, viz. *Namque, etenim, ſiquidem, ergo, igitur, itaque, &c.* Hence aroſe the Diviſion of them into *Prepoſitive, Subjunctive, and Common*.

¶ C H A P. IX.

APPENDIX, containing some Observations concerning the various Divisions and Significations of Words, especially *Noun and Verb*

1. **A**LL Words whatsoever are either *Simple* or *Compound*. A **SIMPLE** Word [*Simplex*] is that which was never more than one; as, *Iustus, lego*. A **COMPOUND** [*Compositum*] is that which is made up of two or more words, or of a Word and some Syllabical Adjection; as, *Injustus, perlego, derelinquo, egomet*.

2. All Words whatsoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A **PRIMITIVE** Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word; as, *Iustus, lego*. A **DERIVATIVE** [*Derivativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as, *Iustitia, lectio*.

I. Besides the more general Divisions of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, mentioned p. 5. and 22. there are other particular Divisions of them taken from their various Significations and Derivations: The most remarkable whereof are these:

I. With respect to Signification.

1. A **COLLECTIVE** [*Collectivum*] is a Substantive Noun which signifies many in the singular Number; as, *Populus, a People; exercitus, an Army*.

2. An **INTERROGATIVE** Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] is that by which we ask a question; as, *Quis? Who? Uter? Which of the two? Qualis? Of what Kind? Quantus? How great? Quot? How many?* And these, when they are used without a Question, are called **INDEFINITES**.

3. A **RELATIVE** Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an Adjective that has respect to something spoken before; as, *Qui, ille, ipse, &c. Alius, alter, reliquus, cetera, -um, qualis, quantus, &c.*

4. A **PARTITIVE** Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which signifies many severally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis, nullus, quisque, &c.* or a Part of many; as, *Quidam, aliquis, neuter, nemo, &c.*

5. A **NUMERAL** Noun [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which signifies Number, (of which there are four principal Kinds:)

(1) **CARDINAL**, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *Unus, duo, tres, &c.*

(2) **ORDINAL** [*Ordinalis*]; as, *Primus, secundus, tertius, &c.*

(3) **DISTRIBUTIVE**, [*Distributivus*]; as, *Singuli, bini, terni, &c.*

(4) **MULTIPLICATIVE**; [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *Simplex, duplex, triplex, &c.*

II. With respect to Signification and Derivation.

1. A **PATRONYMICK** Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a Substantive Noun derived from another Substantive proper, signifying one's Pedigree or Extraction; as, *Priamides, the Son of Priamus; Priamis, the Daughter of Priamus; Aetias, the Daughter of Aetes; Nerine, the Daughter of Nereus*. *Patronymicks* are generally derived from the Name of the Father; but the Poets (for others seldom use them) derive them also from the Grandfather, or some other remarkable Person of the Family; nay, sometimes from the Founder of a Nation or People, and also from Countries and Cities; as, *Aeacides, the Son, Grandson, Great-grandson, or one of the Posterity of Aeacus; Romulida, the Romans, from their first King Romulus*.

lus; *Sicelis*, *Troas*, a Woman of Sicily, of Troy, &c. *Patronymicks* of Men end in *des*; of Women in *is*, *as*, and *ne*. These in *des* and *ne* are of the First, and these in *is* and *as* of the Third Declension.

2. An **ABSTRACT Noun** [*Abstractum*] is a Substantive derived from an Adjective, expressing the Quality of that Adjective in general, without regard to the thing in which the Quality is; as, *Bonitas*, Goodness; *Dulcedo*, Sweetness; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. With respect to these Abstracts, the Adjectives from which they come are called **CONCRETES**; because, besides the Quality, they also confusedly signify something as the subject of it, without which they cannot make Sense.

3. A **GENTILE** or **PATRIAL Noun** [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive proper, signifying one's Country; as, *Scotus*, *Macedo*, *Arpinus*, *Edinburgensis*, *Taodunanus*; a Man born in Scotland, Macedonia, Arpinum, Edinburgh, Dundee; from *Scotia*, Macedonia, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgum*, *Taodunum*.

4. A **POSSESSIVE Noun** [*Possessivum*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive, whether Proper or Appellative, signifying Possession or Property; as, *Scoticus*, *Herculeus*, *Paternus*, *Herili*, *Femineus*, of or belonging to Scotland, Hercules, a Father, a Master, a Woman; from *Scotia*, *Hercules*, *Pater*, *Herus*, *Femina*.

5. A **DIMINUTIVE Noun** [*Diminutivum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Substantive or Adjective respectively, importing a Diminution, or Lessening of its Signification; as, *Libellus*, a little Book; *Chartula*, a little Paper; *Opusculum*, a little Work; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*; *Parvulus*, very little; *Candidulus*, pretty white; from *parvus*, *candidus*. These for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the same Gender with their Primitives.

6. A **DENOMINATIVE Noun** [*Denominativum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Noun; as, *Gratia*, Favour; *Vinea*, a Vineyard; *Senator*, a Senator; from *Gratus*, *vinum*, *senex*; *Cælestis*, heavenly; *Humanus*, humane; *Aureus*, golden; from *cælum*, *homo*, *aurum*.

7. A **VERBAL NOUN** [*Verbale*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from a Verb; as, *Amor*, Love; *Doctrina*, Learning; *Lectio*, a Lesson; *Auditus*, Hearing; from *Amo*, *dooeo*, *lego*, *audio*; *Amarilis*, lovely; *Capax*, capable; *Volucer*, swift; from *Amo*, *capio*, *volo*.

8. Lastly, There are some Nouns derived from *Participles*, *Adverbs*, and *Prepositions*; as, *Fictitius*, counterfeit; *Crastinus*, belonging to the Morrow; *Contrarius*, contrary; from *Fictus*, *cras*, *contra*.

NOTE, That the same Nouns, according to the different Respects in which they are considered, may sometimes be ranked under one, and sometimes under another of the above-mentioned Classes; as, *Quis* is an *Interrogative*, *Relative*, or *Partitive*; *Pietas*, an *Abstract* or *Denominative*.

II. **Pronouns** are divided into four Classes. viz.

1. **DEMONSTRATIVES**, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*.

2. **RELATIVES**, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.

3. **POSSESSIVES**, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.

4. **PATRIALS** or **GENTILES**, *Nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

Of them also two are **INTERROGATIVES**, *Quis* and *cujas*.

III. 1. Verbs, with respect to their Figure or Frame, are either **SIMPLE**; as, *Amo*, I love: Or, **COMPOUND**; as, *Redamo*, I love again.

2. With

2. With respect to their *Species* or *Origin*, are either **PRIMITIVE**; as, *Lego*, I read; or **DERIVATIVE**; as, *Lectito*, I read frequently.

3. With respect to their *Conjugation*, are either **REGULAR**; as, *Amo*; or **IRREGULAR**; as, *Volo*, *vis*, &c.

4. With respect to their *Constituent Parts*, are either **COMPLETE**; as, *Amo*; or **DEFECTIVE**; as, *Inquam*; or **REDUNDANT**; as, *Edo*, *edis*, &c.

5. With respect to their *Persons*, are either **PERSONAL**; as, *Amo*; or **IMPERSONAL**; as, *Pœnitet*.

6. With respect to their *Terminations*, they end either in **O**; as, *Amo*; or in **R**; as, *Amor*; or in **M**; as, *Sum*.

7. With respect to their *Signification*, Verbs are either *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

(1.) A **SUBSTANTIVE** Verb [*Substantivum*] is that which signifies simply the Affirmation of Being or Existence; as, *Sum*, *fi*, *existo*, I am.

(2.) An **ADJECTIVE** Verb [*Adjectivum*] is that which, together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own; as, *Amo*; i. e. *Sum amans*, I am loving.

An *Adjective* Verb is divided into *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*.

[1.] An **ACTIVE** Verb [*Activum*] is that which affirms Action of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amo*, *loquor*, *curro*.

[2.] A **PASSIVE** Verb [*Passivum*] is that which affirms Passion of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amor*.

[3.] A **NEUTER** Verb [*Neutrum*] is that which affirms neither Action nor Passion of its Nominative; but simply signifies the State, Posture, or Quality of Things; as, *Sto*, *sedeo*, *maneo*, *duro*, *vireo*, *flaveo*, *sapio*, *quiesco*, &c. To stand, sit, stay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wise, to rest.

An *Active* Verb is again divided into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

[1.] An **Active TRANSITIVE** Verb [*Transitivum*] is that whose Action passeth from the Agent to some other Thing; as, *Amo patrem*.

[2.] An **Active INTRANSITIVE** Verb [*Intransitivum*] is that whose Action passeth not from the Agent to any other; as, *curro*, I run; *ambulo*, I walk.

When to any Verb you put the Question **WHOM?** or **WHAT?** if a rational Answer can be returned, the Verb is *Transitive*; as, *Whom* do you teach? Answ. *A boy*, the Grammar: If not, it is *Intransitive*; as, *What* do you run, go, come, live, sleep, &c. to which no rational Answer can be given, unless it be by a Word of like Signification, which sometimes indeed these Verbs have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleasant Life; *Eo iter longum*, I go a long Journey.

NOTE, 1. That the same Verb is sometimes *Transitive*, and sometimes *Intransitive*; as, *Ver incipit*, the Spring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus*, to begin an Action. *Plaut.*

NOTE, 2. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs are often Englished with the Signs of a *Passive* Verb; as, *Calco*, I am hot; *Palleo*, I am pale; *Jacobus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs want the *Passive* Voice, unless *impersonally* used, as the *Intransitive* Verbs most frequently and elegantly are; as, *pugnatur*, *itur*, *ventum est*.

Tho' all Verbs whatsoever, with respect to their Signification, belong to some one or other of the foregoing Classes, yet because Grammarians, to-

gether

Part II. Chap. IX. Appendix, &c. 73

gether with the Signification of Verbs, are obliged also to consider their Termination, and finding that all *Active* Verbs did not end in *o*, neither all *Passives* in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former, two or three other *Classes* or *Kinds* of them, viz. *Deponent*, *Common*, and *Neuter-passive*.

[1.] A *DEPONENT* Verb [*Deponens*] is that which has a *Passive* Termination, but an *Active* or *Neuter* Signification; as, *Loquor*, I speak; *Morior*, I die.

[2.] A *COMMON* Verb [*Commune*] is that which under a *Passive* Termination has a Signification either *Active* or *Passive*; as, *Criminor*, I accuse, or I am accused; *Dignor*, I think, or I am thought worthy.

[3.] A *NEUTER-PASSIVE* [*Neutro-passivum*] is that which is half *Active* and half *Passive* in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly *Passive*; as *Fio*, *factus sum*, To be made. Or wholly *Active* or *Neuter*; as, *Audeo*, *ausus sum*, To dare; *Gaudeo*, *gavissus sum*, To rejoice.

8. To omit the other *Kinds* of *Derivative* Verbs, which are not very material, there are three *Kinds* of them derived from Verbs, which deserve to be remarked, viz. *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

[1.] *FREQUENTATIVES* [*Verba frequentativa*] signify *Frequency* of Action. They are formed from the last *Supine*, by changing *atu* into *ito* from Verbs of the first, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the first; as, *Clamito*, To cry frequently, from *clamo*; *Dormito*, To sleep often, from *dormio*. From them also are formed other *Frequentatives*: as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursito*; *jacio*, *jaſto*, *jaſtito*; *pello*, *pulſo*, *pulſito*, and *pulto*.

[2.] *INCEPTIVES* [*Verba inceptiva*] signify, that a Thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the second *Person Sing. Pres. Ind.* by adding *co*. They are all of the Third Conjugation, and want both *Preterite* and *Supine*; as, *Caleo*, *cales*, *calesco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] *DESIDERATIVES* [*Verba desiderativa*] signify a *Desire* of Action. They are formed from the last *Supine* by adding *rio*. They are all of the Fourth Conjugation, and generally want both *Preterite* and *Supine*; as, *Cœnaturio*, I desire to sup; *Eſurio*, I am hungry, or I desire to eat.

9. Lastly, In *Construction*, Verbs receive names from their more particular Significations; as, *Vocative* Verbs, or Verbs of naming, Verbs of remembering, of want, of teaching, of accusing, &c.

In the preceding Division of Verbs, with respect to their Signification, I have receded a little from the common Method; and in particular, I have given a different Account of *Neuter Verbs* from that commonly received by Grammarians; who comprise under them all *Intransitive Verbs*, tho' their Significations be never so much *Active*. But this I did, partly from the Reason of the Name, which imports a Negation both of Action and Passion, and partly to give a distinct View of the Significations of Verbs, without regard to their Terminations, which in that respect are purely accidental and arbitrary.

I have also excluded from the Divisions of Verbs those called *NEUTRAL-PASSIVES* [*Lat. Neutra-passiva*] because originally they are *Active Verbs*; for the primary Signification of *vapulo* is *pereo* or *ploro*; of *exulo*, *extra ſolium* &c.; of *veneo*, *venum eo*; of *nubo*, *velo*. *Liceo* indeed is a very singular Verb, for in the *Active Voice* it signifies *passively*, and in the *Passive*, *actively*.

74 *Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,*
PARS TERTIA. PART THIRD.
De Sententiis, sive Ora- **Of Sentences,** *tion.* **Speech.**

SENTENTIA est quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus simul junctis enunciata; ut, *Tu legis; Tu legis libros; Tu legis libros bonos; Tu legis libros bonos domi (a).*

A SENTENCE is any Thought of the Mind expressed by two or more Words put together; as, You read; You read Books; You read good Books; You read good Books at home.

C A P. I.
De Syntaxi, sive Con-
structione.

SYNTAXIS est recta vocum in Oratione Compositio.

Ejus partes sunt duæ, *Con-*
cordantia & Regimen (b).

C H A P. I.
Of Syntar, or Con-
struction.

SYNTAX is the right Or-

dering of Words in Speech.
Its Parts are two, Concord
and Government.

Concordantia

(a) We are now arrived at the principal part of Grammar; for the great end of Speech being to convey our thoughts unto others, it will be of little Use to us to have a Stock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unless we can also apply them to Practice, and make them answer the great Purposes for which they are intended. To the Attainment of this End there are two things absolutely necessary, viz. I. That in Speech we dispose and frame our Words according to the Laws and Rules established among those whose Language we speak. II. That in like Manner we know what is spoken and written, and be able to explain it in due Order, and resolve it into the several Parts of which it is made up. The first of these is called SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, and the second is named EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION. The first shews us how to speak the Language ourselves, and the second, how to understand it when spoken by others. But it must be owned, that there is such a necessary Connection between them, that he that is Master of the first cannot be ignorant of the second.

(b) NOTE, I. That the Difference between Concord and Government consists chiefly in this, that in Concord there can no change be made in the Accidents, that is, Gender, Case, Number, or Person of the one, but the like Change must also be made in the other: But in Government, the first Word (if declinable) may be changed, without any Change in the second. In Concord, the first Word may be called the Word directing,

Con
dictio
quibus
Reg
regit

I.
C
1. A

2. V

3. R

4. S
vo

A
num

a
a
b

and
Word
No
have
the
the
Dire
when
with

N
ask
fwer
Rela
Na
No
Subj
son
N
und
is i
f
o

Bo

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 75

Concordantia est quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibusdam accidentibus.

Regimen est quando dictio regit certum casum.

Concord is when one Word agrees with another in some Accidents.

Government is when a Word governs a certain Case.

I. De Concordantia.

Concordantia est quadruplex,

1. *Adjectivi cum Substantivo.*
2. *Verbi cum Nominativo.*
3. *Relativi cum Antecedente.*
4. *Substantivi, cum Substantivo.*

REGULA I.

Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo in genere, numero & casu; ut,

^a *Vir* ^b *bonus.*

^a *Femina* ^b *casta.*

^b *Dulce* ^a *pomum.*

I. Of Concord.

Concord is fourfold,

1. *Of an Adjective with a Substantive.*
2. *Of a Verb with a Nominative.*
3. *Of a Relative with an Antecedent.*
4. *Of a Substantive with a Substantive.*

RULE I.

An Adjective agrees with a Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case; as,

A good Man.

A chaste Woman.

A sweet Apple.

K 2

REG. II.

and the second, the *Word directed*: In *Government*, the first is called the *Word governing*, and the second, the *Word governed*.

NOTE, 2. That for the greater Ease both of Master and Scholar, we have noted these Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth, with the Letters [a] and [b]; the Word *Directing* or *Governing* with [a], and the Word *Directed* or *Governed* with [b]; or where there are two Words *Directing* or *Governing*, the first with [a], and the second with [a^a]; and where two Words *Directed* or *Governed*, the first with [b], and the second with [bb].

Number 1. NOTE, 1. That the Way to find out the *Substantive* is to ask the Question *WHO* or *WHAT*? to the *Adjective*; for that which answers to it is the *Substantive*. And the same Question put to the *Verb* or *Relative*, discovers the *Nominative* or *Antecedent*.

NOTE, 2. That another *Adjective* sometimes supplies the Place of a *Substantive*; as, *Amicus certus*, A sure Friend; *Bona ferina*, Good Venison. *Homo* being understood to *Amicus*, and *Caro* to *Ferina*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Substantive* *THING* [*Negotium*] is most frequently understood; and then the *Adjective* is always put in the *Neuter* Gender, as if it were a *Substantive*; as *Triste* [supple *Negotium*] i. e. *Res tristis*, sad Thing. *Bona* [supple *Negotia*] i. e. *Res bonæ*, Good Things.

R E G. II.

2 VERBUM concordat cum
Nominativo ante se in
numero & persona ; ut,

^a Ego ^b lego.

^a Tu ^b scribis.

^a Præceptor ^b docet.

R U L E II.

A Verb agrees with the No-
minative before it in Num-
ber and Person ; as,

I read.

You write.

The Master teacheth.

A N N O T A T I O N E S.

3 1. VERBA Substantiva,
Vocandi & Gestûs, habent
utrinque Nominativum ad
eandem rem pertinentem ;
ut,

^b Ego ^a sum ^{bb} discipulus.

^b Tu ^a vocaris ^{bb} Joannes.

^b Illa ^a incedit ^{bb} Regina.

1. Substantive Verbs, Verbs
of Naming and Gesture, have a
Nominative both before and af-
ter them, belonging to the same
thing ; as,

I am a Scholar.

You are named John.

She walks [as] a Queen.

4 2. ¶ EXCEP. Infiniti-
vus Modus Accusativum ante
se habet ; ut,

Gaudeo ^b te ^a valere.

2. ¶ EXCEP. The Infini-
tive Mood has an Accusative
before it : as,

I am glad that you are well.

3. ¶ E S S E

Num. 2. NOTE, That the Infinitive Mood frequently supplies the Place of the Nominative ; as, *Mentiri non est meum*, To lie is not mine, [or my property.]

Num. 3. 1. Substantive Verbs are *Sum*, *fiô*, *forem*, and *existo*.

2. Verbs of Naming are these Passives, *Appellor*, *dicor*, *vocor*, *nominor*, *nuncupor*, to which add, *Videor*, *existimor*, *creor*, *constitutor*, *salutor*, *designor*, &c.

3. Verbs of Gesture are, *Eo*, *incedo*, *venio*, *cubo*, *sto*, *sedeo*, *evado*, *fugio*, *dormio*, *somnio*, *maneo*, &c.

NOTE, That any Verb may have after it the Nominative, when it belongs to the same Thing with the Nominative before it ; as, *Audiivi hoc puer*, I heard it being [or when I was] a Boy. *Defendi rempublicam adolescens*, non deseram senex ; I defended the Commonwealth [when I was] a young Man, I will not desert it [now that I am] old. *Cic.*

Num. 4. NOTE, That when the Particle THAT [in Lat. QUOD, or UT] comes between two Verbs, it is elegantly left out, by turning the Nominative Case into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mood ; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say [that] the King is coming ; rather than *Aiunt quod rex adventat*. *Turpe est eos qui bene nati sunt turpiter vivere*, a shameful thing that they who are well born should live basely ; rather than, *Ut ii turpiter vivant*. See p. 43.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 77

3. ¶ ESSE habet eundem casum post se quem ante se ;

^b Petrus cupit ^a esse ^{bb} vir doctus.

Scio ^b Petrum ^a esse ^{bb} virum doctum.

^b Mihi ^{bb} negligenti ^a esse non licet.

R E G. III.

* RELATIVUM Qui, quæ, quod, concordat cum Antecedente in genere & numero ; ut,

^a Vir sapit ^b qui pauca loquitur.

1. Si nullus interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus ; ut,

3. ¶ ESSE hath the same Case after it that it hath before it ; as.

Peter desires to be a learned Man.

I know that Peter is a learned Man.

I am not allowed to be negligent.

R U L E III.

THE Relative Qui, quæ, quod, agrees with the Antecedent in Gender and Number ; as,

He is a wise Man who speaks little.

1. If no Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative to the Verb ; as,

Præceptor

Num. 5. NOTE, 1. That we frequently say, *Licet nobis esse bonos*, We may be good. *Tibi expedit esse sedulum*, 'Tis expedient for you to be diligent. *Nemini unquam nocuit fuisse pium*, It never hurted any Man that he hath been pious : But then the Accusative, *Nos, te, illum*, &c. is understood ; thus, *Licet nobis [nos] esse bonos*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That if *Esse* and the other Infinitives of Substantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming, &c. have no Accusative or Dative before them, the Word that follows (whether Substantive or Adjective) is to be put in the Nominative ; as, *Dicitur esse Vir*, He is said to be a Man. *Non videtur esse facturus*, He seems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante suum obitum*, No Man should be called happy before his death.

Num. 6. NOTE, 1. That the Antecedent is a Substantive Noun that goes before the Relative, and is again understood to the Relative. Wherefore it will not be amiss to teach the Scholar to supply it every where ; thus, *Beware of Idleness, which [Idleness] is an Enemy to Virtue*, Cave segnitiam, quæ [segnities] est inimica virtuti. Nay Cicero himself, but especially *Cæsar*, frequently repeat the Substantive ; as, *In oppidum perfugisti, quo in oppido*, &c. You fled to a Town, in which Town, *Cic. Diem dicant, quo die ad ripam Rhodani conveniant*, They appoint a Day, on which Day they should meet upon the Bank of the River *Rhosne, Cæs.*

NOTE, 2. That when the Relative respects a whole Sentence, it is put in the Neuter Gender ; as, *Joannes mortuus est, quod mihi summo doleri est*, John is dead, which is a great grief to me.

NOTE, 3. That the Person of the Relative is always the same with that of its Antecedent ; as, *Ego qui doceo*, I who teach. *Tu qui discis*, You who art taught. *Thæ Maston whi* is taught.

78 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

Præceptor^a qui^b docet.

The Master who teacheth.

8 2. At si interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit ejus casus quem Verbum aut Nomen sequens, vel Præpositio præcedens regere solent; ut,

Deus^b quem^a colimus.

^b Cujus^a munere vivimus.

^b Cui nullus est^a similis.

A^b quo facta sunt omnia.

2. But if a Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be of that Case, which the Verb or Noun following, or the Preposition going before use to govern; as, God whom we worship.

By whose Gift we live.

To whom there is none like.

By whom all things were made.

ANNO TATIO.

9 ¶ Duo vel plura Substantiva singularia, Conjunctione [*&*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.] copulata, habent Adjectivum, Verbum, vel Relativum plurale; ut,

^a Petrus & ^{aa} Joannes^b qui^b sunt^b docti.

¶ Two or more Substantives singular, coupled together with a Conjunction [*&*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.] have a Verb, Adjective, or Relative plural; as,

Peter and John who are learned.

REG. IV.

Num. 9. NOTE, 1. That when the Substantives are of different Genders, the Adjective or Relative plural must agree with the Masculine rather than the Feminine or Neuter; as, *Pater & mater qui sunt mortui*, The Father and Mother who are dead:

EXCEP. But if the Substantives signify things without Life, the Adjective, or Relative Plural, must be put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Divitia, decus, gloria in oculis sita sunt*, Riches, Honour, and Glory are set before your Eyes.

NOTE, 2. That when two or more Nominatives are of different Persons, the Verb plural must agree with the First Person rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third; as, *Si tu & Tullia valetis, ego & Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

NOTE, 3. That the Adjective or Verb frequently agree with the Substantive or Nominative that is nearest them, and are understood to the rest; as, *Et ego in culps sum & tu*, Both I and you are in the Fault: Or, *Et ego & tu es in culpa. Nihil hic deest nisi carmina*, There is nothing here wanting but Charms; *Nihil hic deest nisi carmina desunt*. This manner of Construction is most usual, when the different Words signify one and the same thing, or much to the same Purpose; as, *Mens, ratio, & consilium in senibus est*, Understanding, Reason, and Prudence is in old Men.

NOTE, 4. That Collective Nouns, because they are equivalent to a Plural Number, have sometimes the Adjective or Verb in the Plural Number; as, *Pars virgis casti*, A Part of them were scourged. *Turba ruunt*, The Crowd rush.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 77

REG. IV.

UNUM Substantivum concordat cum alio eandem rem significante in casu; ut,
a Cicero b Orator.
a Urbs b Edinburgum.
a Filius b deliciae matris suae (a).

RULE IV.

ONE Substantive agrees¹⁰ with another, signifying the same thing in Case; as,
Cicero the Orator.
The City Edinburgh.
A Son the Darling of his Mother.

II. De Regimine.

REGIMEN est triplex,

1. *Nominum.*
2. *Verborum.*
3. *Vocum indeclinabilium.*

REGIMEN Nominum.

§ 1. *Substantivorum*

REG. I.

UNUM Substantivum regit aliud rem diversam significans in Genitivo; ut,

Amor b Dei.

Lex b Naturæ.

A N N O T A T I O N E S.

1. Si posterius Substantivum adjunctum habeat Adje-

II. Of Government.

GOVERNMENT is threefold,

1. Of Nouns.
2. Of Verbs.
3. Of Words indeclinable.

1. *The Government of Nouns.*

§ 1. Of SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE I.

ONE Substantive governs¹¹ another signifying a different Thing in the Genitive; as,

The Love of God.

The Law of Nature.

1. *If the last Substantive¹² have an Adjective of Praise*
Æivum

To these four Concords some add a Fifth, viz. That of the Responsive with its Interrogative in Case; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater.* gave you Money? My Father. *Quo cares? Libro.* What do you? A Book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule; for responsive, or the Word that answers the Question, does not depend on the Interrogative, but upon the Verb, or some other Word joined to it; which, because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the Answer; thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater* [dedit mihi pecuniam.] *Quo cares? [Cares] Libro.*

NOTE. 1. That OF or 's is the ordinary Sign of this Genitive.

2. That the Relative Pronouns, *Ejus, illius, Cujus, &c.* Englished, *his, its, their, thereof, whereof, whose,* have their Substantives generally understood; as, *Liber ejus.* [supple *Hominis, Fæminæ, &c.*] His Book. or *Libri eorum,* [supple *Hominum, Fæminarum, &c.*] Their Books.

ativum laudis vel vituperii,
in Genitivo vel Ablativo po-
ni potest; ut,

^a Vir ^b summæ ^b prudentiæ,
vel ^b summæ ^b prudentiæ.

^a Puer ^b probæ ^b indolis,
vel ^b probæ ^b indole.

or Dispraise joined with it, it
may be put in the Genitive or
Ablative; as,

A Man of great Wisdom.

A Boy of a good Dispo-
sition.

13* 2. Adjectivum in Neu-
tro genere absque Substanti-
vo regit Genitivum; ut,

^a Multum ^b pecuniæ.

^a Quid ^b rei?

2. An Adjective in the Neu-
ter Gender without a Substan-
tive governs the Genitive; as,

Much Money.

What is the Matter.

§ 2. Adjectivorum.

REG. I.

14* **A**DJECTIVA ver-
balia vel affectionem
animi significantia Geniti-
vum postulant; ut,

^a Avidus ^b gloriæ.

^a Ignarus ^b fraudis.

^a Memor ^b beneficiorum.

§ 2. OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE I.

VERBAL Adjectives, or
such as signify an Affec-
tion of the Mind, require the
Genitive; as,

Desirous of Glory.

Ignorant of Fraud.

Mindful of Favours.

REG. II.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*; *Quæ res?*

NOTE, 1. That these Adjectives which thus govern the Genitive as if they were Substantives, are generally such as signify Quantity; as, *Multum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum.*

NOTE, 2. That *Plus* and *Quid* always govern the Genitive, and upon that Account are by many thought real Substantives.

Num. 14. To this Rule belong,

1. Adjectives of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus, ambitiosus, avarus, studiosus, curiosus.*

2. OF KNOWLEDGE; as, *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, collidus, providus, doctus, docilis, præsciens, præcogus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, consultus, &c.*

3. OF IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus, rudis, imperitus, nescius, inscius, incertus, dubius, anxius, sollicitus, immemor.*

4. OF GUILT; as, *Consciens, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus.*

5. Verbals in AX and NS; as, *Edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, pervicax, And Amans, cupiens, appetens, petiens, fugiens, sitiens, negligens, &c.*

6. To which may be referred, *Æmulus, munificus, parcus, prodigus, profusus, securus.*

REG. II.

* **P**ARTITIVA et partitiva posita, Comparativa, Superlativa, Interrogativa, & quædam Numeralia, Genitivo plurali gaudent; ut,

- ^a *Aliquis* ^b *Philosophorum.*
- ^a *Senior* ^b *fratrum.*
- ^a *Doctissimus* ^b *Romanorum.*
- ^a *Quis* ^b *nostrum?*
- ^a *Una* ^b *Musarum.*
- ^a *Octavus* ^b *sapientum.*

REG. III.

ADJECTIVA significantia commodum vel incommodum, similitudinem vel dissimilitudinem, regunt Dativum; ut,

- ^a *Utilis* ^b *bello.*
- ^a *Perniciosus* ^b *reipublicæ.*
- ^a *Similis* ^b *patri,*

RULE II.

PARTITIVES and Words placed partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives, and some Numerals, govern the Genitive plural; as,

Some one of the Philosophers.
The elder of the Brothers.
The most learned of the Romans.

Which of us?
One of the Muses.
The eighth of the wise Men.

RULE III.

ADJECTIVES signifying Profit or Disprofit, Likeness, or Unlikeness, govern the Dative; as,

Profitable for War.
Pernicious to the Common-
Like his Father. (wealth.

L

17 ¶ Verbalia

Num. 15. NOTE 1. That it is easy to know when this Rule takes place, by resolving the Genitive into *inter* with the *Accus.* or *de, e, ex,* with the *Abl.* as, *Optimus Regum,* The best of Kings, i. e. *Optimus inter Reges,* or *de, e, ex Regibus.*

NOTE 2. That when there are two Substantives of different Genders, the Partitive, &c. rather agrees with the first than the last; as, *Indus fluminum maximus,* Cic. *Leo animalium fortissimus.* Plin. Otherwise it is of the same Gender with the Substantive it governs; as, *Pauca animalium,* *Unaqueque feminarum.*

NOTE 3. That Partitives, &c. take the Genitive singular of Collective Nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in Gender; as, *Præstantissimus nostræ civitatis,* Cic. *Nympharum sanguinis una.* Virg.

Num. 16. NOTE 1. That some of these Adjectives govern also the Genitive; as, *Amicus, inimicus, socius, vicinus, par, equalis, similis, dissimilis, proprius, communis,* &c.

NOTE 2. That Adjectives signifying Motion or Tendency to a Thing, use rather the Accusative with AD, than the Dative; such as, *Proclivus, pronus, propensus, velox, celer, tardus, piger,* &c. as,

Est piger ad pœnas Princeps, ad præmia velox, Ovid.

NOTE 3. That Adjectives signifying Fitness or the contrary, may have either of them; as, *Aptus, ineptus bello,* or *ad bellum.*

- 17 ¶ Verbalia in BILIS & DUS
regunt Dativum ; ut,
^a *Amandus* vel ^a *amabilis*
^b *omnibus*.

R E G. IV.

- 18 * **A** DJECTIVA dimen-
sionem significantia
regunt accusativum mensu-
ræ ; ut,
Columna sexaginta ^b *pedes*
^a *alta*.

R E G. V.

- 19 * **C** OMPARATIVUS
regit Ablativum
qui resolvitur per QUAM ; ut,
^a *Dulcior* ^b *melle*.
^a *Præstantior* ^b *auro*.

R E G. VI.

- 20 * **D** IGNUS, *Indignus*,
Contentus, *Præditus*,
Captus, & *Fretus* : Item,
Natus, *Satus*, *Ortus*, *Editus*,

Verbals in BILIS and DUS
govern the Dative ; as,
To be beloved of all Men.

R U L E IV.

A DJECTIVES signifying
Dimension govern the Ac-
cusative of Measure ; as,

A Pillar sixty Foot high.

R U L E V.

T H E Comparative Degree
governs the Ablative,
which is resolved by Quam ; as,
Sweeter than Honey.
Better than Gold.

R U L E VI.

T H E S E Adjectives, Dig-
nus, Indignus, Conten-
tus, Præditus, Captus, and Fre-
tus : Also Natus, Satus, Or-
&

Num. 17. OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this Dative.

NOTE, That Participles of the Preter Tense, and Passive Verbs also, especially among the Poets, have frequently the Dative, instead of the Ablative with A or AB ; as, *Nullus eorum mihi visus est*, None of them was seen by me ; *Non audior ulli*, I am not heard by any.

Num. 18 The Adjectives of DIMENSION are, *Altus*, high or deep ; *crassus* or *densus*, thick ; *latus*, broad ; *longus*, long ; *profundus*, deep. The Names of MEASURE are, *Digitus*, an Inch ; *palmus*, an Handbreadth ; *pes*, a Foot ; *cubitus*, a Cubit ; *ulna*, an Ell ; *Passus*, a Pace, &c.

NOTE 1. That Verbs signifying Dimension likewise have the Accusative of Measure ; as, *Patet tres ulnas*, It is three Ells large, *Virg*.

NOTE 2. That sometimes the Word of Measure is put in the Ablative ; as, *Fossa sex cubitis alta*, *duodecim lata*, *Liv. Venter ejus extat sesquipede*, *Peri*. And sometimes, but rarely, in the Genitive ; as, *Nec longiores duodenum pedum*, *Plin*.

Num. 19. Let the following Examples be observed and imitated : *Muito melior*, Much better. *Nibilo pejor*, Nothing worse. *Major solita*, Greater than usual. *Quo diligentior es, eo doctior evades*, The more diligent you are, the more learned you will become. *Quanto superbior, tanto vilior*, The prouder, the less worth. *Nihil Virgilio doctius*, There is none more learned than *Virgil*.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction.

similia, Ablativum petunt; *tus*, *Editus*, and the like require the Ablative; as,

Dignus ^b *honore*.
Præditus ^b *virtute*.
Contentus ^b *parvo*.
Captus ^b *oculis*.
Fretus ^b *viribus*.
Ortus ^b *regibus*.

Worthy of Honour.
 Endued with Virtue.
 Content with little.
 Blind.
 Trusting to his Strength
 Descended of Kings.

R E G. VII.

ADJECTIVUM copiæ aut inopiæ regit Genitivum vel Ablativum; ut,

^a *Plenus* ^b *iræ* vel *ira*
^a *Inops* ^b *rationis*.

R U L E VII.

AN Abjective of Plenty or Want governs the Genitive or Ablative; as,

Full of Anger.
 Void of Reason.

II. REGIMEN Verborum.

§ 1. Personalium.

R E G. I.

SUM quoties possessionem, proprietatem, aut officium significat, regit Genitivum; ut,

Est ^b *regis* punire rebelles.

^a *Insipientis* ^a *est* dicere non putarum.

^b *Militum* ^a *est* suo duci parere.

¶ Excipiuntur hi Nomina *Meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, *no-*

II. The Government of Verbs.

§ 1. Of PERSONAL Verbs.

R U L E I.

SUM when it signifies Possession, Property, or Duty, governs the Genitive; as,

It belongs to the King to punish Rebels.

It is the Property of a Fool to say, I had not thought.

It is the Duty of Soldiers to obey their General.

¶ These Nominatives, *Me*, *tu*, *se*, *no-*

L 2

strum,

Num. 21. NOTE 1. That *Distentus*, *gravidus*, *refertus*; and *orbis*, *vacuus*, *viduus*, chuse rather the Ablative: *Indigus*, *compos*, and *impos*, the Genitive.

NOTE 2. That some comprehend *Opus* and *Ufus*, when they signify Necessity, under this Rule; as, *Quid opus est verbis*? What Need is there of Words? *Ovid. Nunc viribus usus*, Now there is Need of Strength, Virg. But it is to be remarked, that these are Substantive Nouns, the very same with *Opus*, *operis*, a Work, and *Ufus*, *usus*, Use; and have the Ablative after them, because of the Preposition *IN*, which is understood. Sometimes *Opus* hath the Nominative, by Num. 3. as, *Dux nobis opus est*, We stand in Need of a Leader. It is elegantly joined with the Participle perfect; as *Consulto*, *maturato*, *invento*, *facto*, &c. *opus est*, We must advise, take haste, find out, do, &c.

strum, vestrum ; ut,

^b *Tuum* ^a *est id procurare.*

R E G. II.

24* **M**ISEREOR, *miserescō, & satago*;

^a *agunt* Genitivum ; ut,

^a *Miserere* ^b *civium tuorum.*

^a *Satagit* ^b *rerum suarum.*

R E G. III.

25 **E**ST pro *habeo* regit Dativum personæ ; ut,

^a *Est* ^b *mibi liber.*

^a *Sunt* ^b *mibi libri.*

R E G. IV.

26 **S**UM pro *affero* regit duos Dativos, unum personæ, alterum rei ; ut,

^a *Est* ^b *mibi* ^{bb} *voluptati.*

R E G. V.

27 **V**ERBUM significans commodum vel incommodum regit Dativum ; ut,

Fortuna ^a *favet* ^b *fortibus.*

^b *Nemini* ^a *noceas.*

strum are excepted ; as,

It is your Duty to manage that.

R U L E II.

MISEREOR, *miserescō*, and *satago*, govern the Genitive ; as,

Take Pity on your Countrymen. He hath his Hands full at home.

R U L E III.

EST taken for *habeo* [to have] governs the Dative of a Person ; as,

I have a Book.

I have Books.

R U L E IV.

SUM taken for *affero* [bring] governs two Datives, the one of a Person, and the other of a Thing ; as,

It is [brings] a Pleasure to me.

R U L E V.

A VERB signifying Advantage or Disadvantage governs the Dative ; as, Fortune favours the
Do Hurt to no Man.

R

Num. 23. To these last may be added Possessive Nouns, such as *Regnum humanum, belluinum*, and the like ; as, *Humanum est errare*, It is incident to Man to err.

NOTE, That to all those are understood *Officium, opus, negotium*, or some other Word to be gathered from the Sentence ; as, *Me Pompeii interest esse scis*. You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's Interest, *Cic. i. e. amicum, fautorem*, or the like.

Num. 25. This is more elegant than *Habeo librum*, or *Habeo libros*.

So *Desum* is used elegantly for *Careo* ; as *Desunt mihi libri*, for *Careo libros*, I want Books.

Num. 26. NOTE, That other Verbs, such as, *Do, duco, verto, tribuo, habeo, relinquo*, &c. may have two Datives ; as, *Hoc tibi laudi datur*, You are praised for this, *Ne mihi vitio vertas*, Do not blame me.

To this may be referred such Expressions as these, *Est mihi nomen Joanni*, my Name is John ; which is more elegant than *Est mihi nomen Joannes* or *Joannis*.

Num. 27. This is a very general Rule, and (when we signify a Thing

V
ut,
a
a
*
scor.
fativ
a
a

to b
But i

Verbs signifying.

6.
ven
7
8
in,
affi
mis
inv
occu
Suc
M
of
co,
fati
Acc
ver
ken

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 85

R E G. VI.

VERBUM activè significans regit Accusativum; ut,

^a Ama ^b Deum.

^a Reverere ^b parentes.

* Recordor, memini, reminiscor, & obliviscor, regunt Accusativum, vel Genitivum; ut,

^a Recordor ^b lectionis vel ^b lectionem.

^a Obliviscor ^b injuriæ vel ^b injuriam.

R U L E. VI.

A VERB signifying actively governs the Accusative; as,

Love God.

Reverence your Parents.

Recordor, memini, reminiscor, and obliviscor, govern the Accusative or Genitive; as,

I remember my Lesson.

I forget an Injury.

VERBA

to be acquired to any Person or Thing) almost common to all Verbs. But in a more particular Manner are comprehended under it,

1. To PROFIT or HURT; as *Commodo, proficio, placeo, consulo, noceo, officio*. But *lædo* and *offendo* govern the Accus.

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their Contraries; as *Favere, annuo, arrideo, assentior, adstipulari, gratulor, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulator, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palper, studeo, supplico, &c.* Also *Auxilior, adminiculator, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor*: Also *Derogo, detraho, invideo, &c.* But *Juvo* has the Accus.

3. To COMMAND, OBEY, or RESIST; as, *Impero, precipio, mando*; *Pareo, servio, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem, moriger famulor*; *Pugno, repugno, certo, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, &c.* But *Jubeo* governs the Accus.

4. To THREATEN or to be ANGRY with; as, *Minor, irascor, irascensco*.

5. TO TRUST; as, *sido, confido, credo*.

6. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALÆ; *Satisfacio, benefacio, benedico, malefacio, maledico*.

7. The COMPOUNDS of the Verb SUM; as, *Assum, profum, obsum*.

8. Verbs compounded with these ten PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, contra, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, and super*; as, 1. *Adsto, accumbo, acquiesco, affideo, adhereo, admoveo*. 2. *Antecello, anteco, anteverto*. 3. *Consono, commisceo, condono, commorior*. 4. *Illudo, immorior, inhæreo, insideo, inhibeo, innitor, invigilo, incumbo*. 5. *Interpono, intervenio, intersero*. 6. *Obrepro, obtrecto, occumbo*. 7. *Postpono, posthæreo*. 8. *Præco, præstat* for *excellit, prælato*. 9. *Succedo, submitto, subjicio*. 10. *Supersto, supervenio*.

NOTE 1. That TO, the Sign of the Dative, is frequently understood.

NOTE 2. That TO is not always a Sign of the Dative, for, 1. Verbs of Local Motion, as, *Eo, venio, proficiscor*: And, 2. These Verbs *Provoeco, voco, invito, hortor, specto, pertineo, attineo*, and such like, have the Accusative with the Preposition *ad*.

Num. 29. NOTE, That Nenter and Intransitive Verbs have sometimes an Accusative after them. 1. Of their own or the like Signification; as, *Vivere vitam, Gaudere gaudium, Sitis sanguinem, Olerè hircum*. 2. When taken in a Metaphorical Sense; as, *Ardebat Alexin*, i. e. Vehementer amabat.

VERBA activa alium unâ cum Accusativo casum regentia.

- 30 * 1. *VERBA* accusandi, damnandi, & absolvendi, cum Accusativo personæ, regunt etiam Genitivum criminis; ut,

^a *Arguit* ^b *me* ^{bb} *furti.*

^b *Meipsum* ^{bb} *inertiæ* ^b *condemno.*

^b *Illum* ^{bb} *homicidii* ^a *absolvunt.*

- 31 * 2. *Verba* comparandi, dandi, narrandi, & auferendi, regunt Dativum cum Accusativo; ut,

Active *VERBS* governing another Case together with the Accusative.

1. *VERBS* of Accusing, Condemning, and Acquitting, with the Accusative of the Person, govern also the Genitive of the Crime; as,

He accuses me of Theft.

I condemn myself of Laziness.

They acquit him of Manslaughter.

2. *VERBS* of Comparing, Giving, Declaring, and Taking away, govern the Dative with the Accusative; as,

^a *Comparo*

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING, are, Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, arguo, alligo, astringo, defero, incuso, insimulo, postulo, &c.

2. *Verbs of CONDEMNING, are, Damno, condemno, convinco, &c.*

3. *Verbs of ABSOLVING, are, Solvo, absolvo, libero, purgo, &c.*

NOTE 1. That the Genitive may be changed into the Ablative, either with or without a Preposition; as, *Purgo te hac culpa*, or *de hac culpa*, I clear you of this Fault. *Eum de vi condemnavi.* He found him guilty of a Riot, &c.

NOTE 2. That the Genitive, properly speaking, is governed by some Ablative understood, such as, *Crimine, pœna, actione, causa*; as, *Accusare furti*, i. e. *Crimine furti. Condemnare capitis*, i. e. *pœna capitis.*

NOTE 3. That *Crimine, pœna, actione, capite, morte*, scarcely admit of a Preposition.

Num. 31. 1. To Verbs of COMPARING, belong also Verbs of preferring or postponing.

2. *To Verbs of GIVING, belong Verbs of Receiving, promising, paying, sending, bringing.*

3. *To VERBS of DECLARING, belong Verbs of Explaining, shewing, saying, &c.*

4. *Verbs of TAKING away, are, Aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, surripio, detraho, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, defendo, &c.*

NOTE 1. That many of these Verbs govern the Dative, by *Num. 27.*

NOTE 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the Dative with the Accusative, when together with the Thing done is also signified the Person or Thing to, or for whom it is done; as, *Doce mihi filium*, Teach me my Son; *Cura mihi hanc rem*, Take care of this Affair for me.

NOTE 3. That *Comparo, confero, compono*, have frequently the Ablative with *cum*.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 87

^a *Comparo* ^b *Virgilium* ^{bb} *Homero.*

^b *Suum* ^{bb} *cuique* ^a *tribuito.*

^a *Narras* ^b *fabulam* ^{bb} *furdo.*

^a *Eripuit* ^b *me* ^{bb} *morti.*

* 3. VERBA rogandi & docendi duos admittunt Accusativos, priorem personæ, posteriorem rei; ut,

^a *Posce* ^b *Deum* ^{bb} *veniam.*

^a *Docuit* ^a *me* ^{bb} *Grammaticam.*

I compare *Virgil* to *Homer.*

Give every Man his own. You tell a Story to a deaf Man.

He rescued me from Death.

3. VERBS of Asking and Teaching admit of two Accusatives, the first of a Person, and the second of a Thing; as, Beg Pardon of God. He taught me Grammar.

A N N O T A T I O.

* Quorum activa duos Casus regunt, eorum passiva posteriorem retinent; ut,

^a *Accusor* ^b *furti.*

Virgilius ^a *comparatur* ^b *Homero.*

^a *Doceor* ^b *Grammaticam.*

R E G. VII.

The Passives of such Active Verbs as govern two Cases, do still retain the last of them; as,

I am accused of Theft.

Virgil is compared to *Homer.*

I am taught Grammar.

R U L E VII.

PRETIUM rei à quovis Verbo in Ablativo regitur; ut,

THE Price of a Thing is governed in the Ablative by any Verb; as,

^a *Emi*

Num. 32. NOTE 1. That among the Verbs that govern two Accusatives, are also reckoned these following:

1. CELO; as, *Cela hanc rem uxorem*, Conceal this from your Wife, *Plaut.* But we can say also, *Celo te de hac re*, and *Celo tibi hanc rem*.

2. Verbs of CLOATHING; as, *Induit se calceos*, He put on his Shoes. But these have more commonly the Ablative of the Thing without a Preposition; as, *Vestit se purpura*, He clothes himself with Purple. *Induo* and *quo* have frequently the Person in the Dative, and the Thing in the Accusative; as, *Thoracem sibi induit*, He put on his Breast-plate.

3. MONEO; as, *Id unum te moneo*, I put you in mind of this one Thing. But, unless it is some general Word, [as, *Hoc, illud, id, &c.*] *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio*, have either the Genitive, as, *Admoneo te officii*, I put you in mind of your Duty; or the Ablative with *de*; as, *De hac re te sepius monui*, I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE 2. That Verbs of Asking often change the Accusative of the Person into an Ablative with the Preposition; as, *Oro, exoro, peto, postulo, hoc a te*. I entreat this of you: Some always; as, *Contendo, quero, scitor, sciscitor, a te*. Finally, some have the Accusative of the Person, and the Ablative of the Thing with *de*; as, *Interrogo, consulo, percontor te de hac re*.

^a *Emi librum duobus* ^b *assibus.*

^a *Vendit hic* ^b *auro patriam.*

Demosthenes ^a *docuit talentum.*

35 * *Excipiuntur hi Genitivi, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris; ut,*

^b *Quanti* ^a *constitit?*

Assē & ^b *pluris.*

36 * *VERBA æstimandi regunt hujusmodi Genitivos, Magni, parvi, nihili. &c. ut,*

^a *Æstimo te* ^b *magni.*

R E G. VIII.

37 * *VERBA copię & inopię plerumque Ablativum regunt; ut,*

^a *Abundat* ^b *divitiis.*

^a *Caret omni* ^b *culpa.*

38 * *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, regunt Ablativum; ut,*

^a *Utitur* ^b *fraude.*

^a *Abutitur* ^b *libris.*

I bought a Book for two Shillings.

This Man sold his Country for Gold.

Demosthenes taught for a Talent.

These Genitives, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, are excepted; as,

How much cost it?

A Shilling and more.

VERBS of valuing govern such Genitives as these, Magni, parvi, nihili, &c. as,

I value you much.

R U L E VIII.

VERBS of Plenty and Scarceness for the most part govern the Ablative; as,

He abounds in Riches.

He has no Fault.

Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, govern the Ablative; as,

He uses Deceit.

He abuses Books.

§ 2. Regimen

Num. 35. NOTE, That if the Substantives be expressed, they are put in the Ablative; as, *Quanto pretio? Minore mercede.*

Num. 36. 1. Verbs of Valuing are, *Æstimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, taxo.*

2. The rest of the Genitives are, *Minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, flocci, pili, assis, teruncii, hujus: Also Æquæ and boni after facio and consulo.*

NOTE. That we say also, *Æstimo magno, parvo, supple pretio.*

NOTE 2 That *Alvarus* excludes *majoris*, as wanting Authority. But there is an Example of it to be found in *Rhadus*, II. s. 35.

Multo majoris alapa mecum veni.

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the Genitive; as, *Æget aris*, He wants Money, *Hor. Implentur veteris Bacchi*, They are filled with old Wine. *Virg.*

NOTE. That Verbs of Loading and Unloading, and the like, belong to this Rule; as, *Navis oneratur mercibus*, the Ship is loaded with Goods. *Levabo te hoc onere*, I will ease you of this Burden. *Liberavit nos metum*, He delivered us from Fear.

Num. 38. To these Verbs add, *Nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, com-*

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 89

2. Regimen Verborum Impersonalium.

R E G. IX.

VERBUM impersonale regit Dativum; ut,

^a *Expedit* ^b *reipublicæ*.

^a *Licet* ^b *nemini peccare*.

* EXCEP. 1. *Refert* & *Interest* Genitivum postulant; ut,

^a *Refert* ^b *patris*.

^a *Interest* ^b *omnium*.

* At *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, ponuntur in Accusativo plurali; ut,
^a *Non* ^b *mea*, ^a *refert*.

* EXCEP. 2. *Hæc quinque, Misere, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, piget*, regunt Accusativum personæ, cum Genitivo rei; ut,

^a *Miseret* ^b *me* ^{bb} *tui*.

^a *Pœnitet* ^b *me* ^{bb} *peccati*.

^a *Tædet* ^b *me* ^{bb} *vitiæ*.

* EXCEP. 3. *Hæc quatuor, Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, regunt Accusativum personæ cum Infinitivo; ut,

§ 2. The Government of IMPERSONAL Verbs.

R U L E IX.

AN Impersonal Verb governs the Dative; as,

It is profitable for the State.

No Man is allowed to sin.

EXCEP. 1. *Refert* and *Interest* require the Genitive; as,

It concerns my Father.

It is the Interest of all.

But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the Accusative plural; as,
I am not concerned.

EXCEP. 2. *These five, Misere, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, and piget*, govern the Accusative of a Person, with the Genitive of a Thing; as,

I pity you.

I repent of my Sin.

I am weary of my Life.

EXCEP. 3. *These four, Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, govern the Accusative of the Person with the Infinitive; as,

M

^a *Delectat*

amico, visito, beo, fido, impertior, dignor, nascor, creor, officio, consto, proficior, &c.

NOTE, That *Potior* sometimes governs the Genitive; as, *Potiri hostium*, To get his Enemies into his Power; *Potius verum*, To have the chief Rule.

Num. 39. Such as these, *Accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet, licet, placet, displicet, vacat, restat, prestat, liquet, nocet, dolet, sufficit*,

Together with the Dative they have commonly an Infinitive after them, which is supposed to supply the Place of a Nominative before them.

Num. 42. NOTE, That this Genitive is frequently turned into the Infinitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse; Tædet me vivere*; and so they fall in with the following Rule.

90 *Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,*

^a *Delectat* ^b *me* ^{bb} *studere.*
Non ^a *deceat* ^b *te* ^{bb} *rixari.*

I delight to study.
It does not become you
to scold.

§ 3. *REGIMEN Infinitivi,
Participiorum, Gerundiorum,
& Supinorum.*

R E G. X.

44 **U**NUM Verbum regit
aliud in Infinitivo; ut,
^a *Cupio* ^b *discere.*

R E G. XI.

45 **P**ARTICIPIA, Gerundia
& Supina regunt Ca-
sum suorum Verborum; ut,
^a *Amans* ^b *virtutem.*
^a *Carens* ^b *fraude.*

1. *GERUNDIA.*

46 1. **G**ERUNDIUM in
DUM Nominativi
Casus cum verbo [*est*] regit
Dativum; ut,
^a *Vivendum est* ^b *mihi rectè.*
^a *Moriendum est* ^b *omnibus.*

47 2 Gerundium in DI re-
gitur à Substantivis vel Ad-
jectivis; ut,
^a *Tempus* ^b *legendi.*
^a *Cupidus* ^b *discendi.*

§ 3. The GOVERNMENT
of the Infinitive, Participle
Gerunds, and Supines.

R U L E X.

ONE Verb governs another
in the Infinitive; as,
I desire to learn.

R U L E XI.

PARTICIPLES, Gerunds
and Supines, govern the
Case of their own Verbs; as,
Loving Virtue.
Wanting Guile.

1. *GERUNDS.*

1. **T**HE Gerund in DUM
of the Nominative
Case, with the Verb [*est*] gov-
erns the Dative; as,
I must live well.
All must die.

2. The Gerund in DI is gov-
erned by Substantives or Ad-
jectives; as,
Time of reading,
Desirous to learn.

3. Gerundia

Num. 43. NOTE, That *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the Subjunctive Mood, UT being understood; as, *Oportet facias* [You must do it] *Oportet te facere.*

Attinet, Pertinet, and *Spestat*, when used impersonally, (which rarely happens) have the Accusative with *ad*, as was observed above, p. 85

Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by Adjectives; as, *Cupiscus & cupiscere.*

NOTE, That the Verb *Cæpit* or *cæperunt* is sometimes understood; *Omnes mihi invidere*; supple. *cæperunt.* They all began to envy me.

Num. 46. This Dative is frequently understood; as, *Eandem est*, (Imple nobis) We must go.

NOTE, That this Gerund always imports Necessity, and the Dative is it is the Person on whom the Necessity lies.

Num. 47. 1. The Substantives are such as these, *Amor, causa, gratia, dium, tempus, occasio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupido, &c.*

2. The Adjectives are generally Verbals, mentioned in Num. 14

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 91

3. Gerundium in DO Dativi Casûs regitur ab adjectivis uti-
tatem vel aptitudinem signifi-
cantibus; ut,

Charta^a utilis^b scribendo.

4. Gerundium in DUM Accu-
sativi Casûs regitur à Præpo-
sitionibus *ad* vel *inter*; ut,

Promptus^a ad^b audiendum.

Attentus^a inter^b docendum.

5. Gerundium in DO Ablati-
vi Casûs regitur à Præpositio-
nibus, *a, ab, de, e, ex, vel in*;
ut,

*Pœna^a à^b peccando abster-
ret.*

* Vel sine Præpositione, ut
Ablativus Modi vel Causæ
ut,

*Memoria^a excolendo^b auge-
tur.*

a Defessus sum^b ambulando.

6. Gerundia Accusativum
regentia vertuntur eleganter
in Participia in DUS, quæ
cum suis Substantivis in Gene-
re, Numero & Casu concor-
dant; ut,

Petendum est pacem.

Tempus petendi pacem.

3. The Gerund in DO of 48
the Dative Case is governed
by Adjectives signifying Use-
fulness or Fitness; as,

Paper useful for writing.

4. The Gerund in DUM 49
of the Accusative Case is go-
vernèd by the Prepositions *ad*
or *inter*; as,

Ready to hear.

Attentive in Time of
teaching.

5. The Gerund in DO of 50
the Ablative Case is govern-
ed by the Prepositions, *a, ab,*
de, e, ex, or in; as,

Punishment frightens from
sinning.

* Or without a Preposi- 51
tion, as the Ablative of
Manner or Cause; as,

The Memory is improved
by exercising it.

I am wearied with walk-
ing.

6. Gerunds governing the 52
Accusative are elegantly
turned into the Participles
in DUS, which agree with
their Substantives in Gender,
Number and Case; as,

Petenda est pax.

Tempus petendæ pacis.

M 2

Ad

Num 48. The Adjective of Fitness is often understood; as, *Non est sol-
vendo*, He is not able to pay, [supple *aptus* or *par*.]

NOTE, That sometimes this Gerund is governed by a Verb; as, *Epi-
cum querendo operam dabo*, I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus, Plaut.

Num. 49. NOTE 1. That it hath sometimes, but very rarely the Pre-
positions *ob* and *ante*; as, *Ob absolvendum munus*, For finishing your Task,
e. Ante domandum, Before they are tamed or broken, Virg. speaking
of Horses.

NOTE 2. That what was the Gerund in Dum of the Nominative with
the Verb *est, fuit, &c.* becomes the Accusative with *esse*; as, *Omnibus mori-
endum esse novimus*, We know that all must die.

92. Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Ad petendum pacem.
A petendo pacem.

Ad petendam pacem.
A petendâ pace.

S U P I N A.

53 * 1. Supinum in UM ponitur post verbum motûs; ut,
^a *Abiit* ^b *deambulatum.*

54 * 2. Supinum in U ponitur post nomen Adjectivum; ut,
^a *Facile* ^b *dictu.*

S U P I N E S.

1. *The Supine in UM is put after a Verb of Motion; as,*
He hath gone to walk.

2. *The Supine in U is put after an Adjective Noun; as,*
Easy to tell, or to be told.

§ 4. *Constructio*

Num. 52. Add to these the *Gerunds* of *Fungor*, *fruo*, and *potior*. These *Participles* in DUS are commonly called GERUNDIVES.

NOTE 1. That the *Substantive* must always be of the same Case that the *Gerund* was of.

NOTE 2. That because of its noisy Sound, the *Gerund* in *di* is seldom changed into the *Genitive Plural*; but either the *Accusative* is retained; as *Studio patres vestros videndi*, rather than *Patrum vestrorum videndorum*; or it is turned into the *Genitive Plural*, without changing the *Gerund*; as *patrum vestrorum videndi studio*. Thus *Valla* and *Farnabius*; but see *m. Gram. maj. vol. 2. p. 276.*

Num. 53. The *Supine* in UM is elegantly used with the *Verb Ego* when we signify that one sets himself about the doing of a Thing; as, *mea vita tu laudem is quaesitum?* Are you going to advance your Reputation at the Hazard of my Life? *Ter.* And this is the Reason why this *Supine* with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the Place of the *Future* of the *Infin. Pass.*

Some general Remarks on the Construction of Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

NOTE 1. That *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines* have a twofold Construction; one, as they partake of the Nature of *Verbs*, by which they govern a certain Case after them; another, as they partake of the Nature of *Nouns*, and consequently are subject to the same Rules with them; Thus,

1. A *Participle* is always an *Adjective* agreeing with its *Subst.* by *Num. 1.*

2. A *Gerund* is a *Substantive*, and construed as follows; (1.) That in *dum* of the *Nominative* by *Num. 2.* of the *Accus.* by *Num. 68.* (2.) That in *di* by *Num. 11.* or *14.* (3.) That in *do* of the *Dat.* by *Num. 16.* of the *Ablat.* by *Num. 69.* *71.* or *55.*

3. A *Supine* is also a *Substantive*, (1.) That in *um*, governed by *ad* understood, by *Num. 68.* (2.) That in *u*, governed by *in* understood, by *Num. 71.*

NOTE 2. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Active*, the *first Supine*, and the *Gerund* in *dum*, with the Preposition *ad*, are thus distinguished: The *Supine* is used after *Verbs* of *Motion*; The *Infinitive* after any other *Verbs*; The *Gerund* in *dum* with *ad* after *Adjective Nouns*. But these last are frequently to be met with after *Verbs* of *Motion*; and Poets use also the *Infinitive* after *Adjectives*.

NOTE 3. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Passive* and the *last Supine*, are thus distinguished: The *Supine* hath always an *Adjective* before it; which the *Infinitive* hath not, unless (as I said) among Poets.

4. *Constructio CIRCUMSTANTIARUM.*

1. *Causa, Modus & Instrumentum.*

R E G. XII.

* C A U S A, Modus & Instrumentum ponuntur in Ablativo; ut,

^a *Palleo* ^b *metu.*

^a *Fecit suo* ^b *more.*

^a *Scribo* ^b *calamo.*

2. *Locus.*

R E G. XIII.

* 1. N O M E N oppidum ponitur in Genitivo,

§ 4. The Construction of CIRCUMSTANCES (a.)

1. The Cause, Manner, and Instrument.

R U L E XII.

T H E Cause, Manner, and Instrument are put in the Ablative; as,

I am pale for Fear.

He did it after his own Way.

I write with a Pen.

2. PLACE.

R U L E XIII.

T H E Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, nitivo,

(a) *Adjective Nouns*, but especially *Verbs*, have frequently some CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Discourse; the most considerable whereof, with respect to Construction, are these five; 1. The Cause or Reason why any Thing is done. 2. The Way or Manner how it is done. 3. The Instrument or Thing wherewith it is done. 4. The Place where. And 5. The Time when it is done.

Num. 55. NOTE, 1. That the Cause is known by the Question CUR? or QUARE? Why? Wherefore? &c. The MANNER by the Question QUOMODO? How? and the INSTRUMENT by the Question QUOCUM? Wherewith?

NOTE 2. That the Preposition is frequently expressed with the Cause and Manner; as, *Præ gaudio*, For Joy. *Propter amorem*, For Love. *Ob culpam*, For a Fault. *Cum summo labore*, With great Labour. *Per dedecus*, With Disgrace. But the Preposition [CUM] is never added to the Instrument: For we cannot say, *Scribo cum calamo*; *cum oculis vidi*.

NOTE 3. But here we must carefully distinguish between the Instrument, and what is called the *Ablativus Comitatus*, or Ablative of Concomitancy, i. e. signifying that something was in Company with another; for then the Preposition [CUM] is generally expressed; as, *Ingressus est cum gladio*, He entered with a Sword. i. e. Having a Sword with him or about him.

NOTE 4. That to Cause some refer, the Matter of which any Thing is made; as, *Glypeus are fabricatus*, A Shield made of Brass; But (except with the Poets) the Preposition is for the most part expressed.

NOTE 5. That to Manner some refer the *Adjunct* i. e. something joined to another Thing; as, *Terra amœna floribus*, A Land pleasant with Flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, A Hill white with Snow.

NOTE 6. That to Instrument some refer *Conficior dolore, inedia, &c. Prosequor odio, amore, &c. Afficio te honore, contumelia, &c. Lacesso verbis asperis, &c.*

nitivo, cùm quæstio fit per
UBI; ut,

^a Vixit ^b Romæ.

^a Mortuus est ^b Londini.

57 * EXCEP. Si verò sit ter-
tiæ Declinationis, aut Plura-
lis Numeri, in Ablativo ef-
fertur; ut,

^a Habitat ^b Carthagine.

^a Studuit ^b Parisiis.

58 * 2. Cùm quæstio fit per
QUO, nomen oppidi in Ac-
culativo regitur; ut,

^a Venit ^b Eboracum.

^a Profectus est ^b Athenas.

59 * 3. Si quærat per UN-
DE vel QUA, nomen oppi-
di ponitur in Ablativo; ut,

^a Discessit ^b Aberdoniâ.

^b Laodiceâ iter ^a faciebat.

60 * 4. Domus & Rus eodem
modo quo oppidorum nomi-
na construuntur; ut,

Manet Domi, He stays at Home. Domum revertitur, He
returns home. Domo arcessitus sum, I am called from
home. Vivit rure or ruri. Abiit rus. Redit rure.

61 5. Nominibus regionum,
provinciarum, & aliorum
locorum, non dictis, præpo-
sitio ferè additur; ut,

UBI? Natus in Scotia, in Fisa, in urbe &c.

QUO? Abiit in Scotiam, in Fisam, in [vel ad] urbem, &c.

UNDE? Redit de Scotia, de Fisa, ex urbe, &c.

QUA? Transiit per Scotiam, per Fisam, per urbem, &c.

ANNOTATIO.

Num. 56, &c. NOTE 1. That the Preposition is frequently added to
Names of Towns, (especially when the Question is Quo? Unde? or Qua?
and sometimes omitted to Names of Countries, Provinces, &c,

when the Question is made by

UBI, [where] as,

He lived at Rome.

He died at London.

EXCEP. But if it is of the
third Declension, or of the
Plural Number, it is exprest
in the Ablative; as,

He dwells at Carthage.

He studied at Paris.

2. When the Question is made
by QUO, [Whither] the Name
of a Town is governed in the
Accusative; as,

He came to Edinburgh.

He went to Athens.

3. If the Question is made
by UNDE, [Whence] or QUA,
[by or through what Place]
the Name of a Town is put in
the Ablative; as,

He went from Aberdeen.

He went through Laodicea.

4. Domus and Rus are con-
strued the same Way as Names
of Towns; as,

* Dist
lio poni
terdum

Glasce
trig
a Iter

R
* 1. T
stio fit p

a Ven

* 2.
QUAM
in Accu
sed sapi

a Ma
Sex a

NOTE
when the
the Groun
and abro
managed
NOTE
urbe is un
bilis, but

¶ Th
exp

The Na
a Town

† i. e.
But when
tion ad; a

Num. 6

1. Noun

2. Noun
tive or Ab

ANNOTATIO.

* Distantia unius locis ab alio ponitur in Accusativo, interdum & in Ablativo; ut,

*Glasœua^a distat Edinburgo triginta^b millia passuum.
^a Iter vel^b itinire unius diei.*

The Distance of one Place⁶² from another is put in the Accusative, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,

*Glasgow is thirty Miles distant from Edinburgh.
 One day's journey.*

3. Tempus.

R E G. XIV.

* 1. **T**EMPUS ponitur in Ablativo, cum quæstio fit per QUAND(); ut,

^a Venit^b hora tertiâ.

* 2. Cùm quæstio fit per QUAMDIU, tempus ponitur in Accusativo vel Ablativo; sed sæpius Accusativo; ut,

*^a Mansit paucos^b dies.
^a Sex^a mensibus^b absuit.*

3. TIME.

R U L E XIV.

1. **T**IME is put in the⁶³ Ablative, when the Question is made by QUANDO, [When] as,

He came at three o'Clock.

2. When the Question is⁶⁴ made by QUAMDIU, [How long] Time is put in the Accusative or Ablative, but oftener in the Accusative; as,

He staid a few Days.

He was away six Months.

De

NOTE 2. That *Humi*, *Militiæ*, and *Belli*, are also used in the Genitive, when the Question is made by *Ubi?* as, *Procumbit humi*, He lies down on the Ground. *Domi militiæque una fuimus*, We were together both at home and abroad, or in Peace and War. *Ter. Belli domique agitabatur*, Was managed both in Peace and War. *Sall.*

NOTE 3. That when the Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, in *urbe* is understood, and therefore we cannot say, *Natus est Romæ urbis nobilis*, but *urbe nobili*.

¶ These Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus expressed;

The Name of a Town after	{ IN or AT TO or INTO FROM or THROUGH }	is put in the	{ Gen or Abl. † Accusative. Ablative.
--------------------------	---	---------------	---

† i. e. When it is of the third Declension, or of the Plural Number. But when AT signifies about or near a Place, we make use of the Preposition *ad*; as, *Bellum quod ad Trojam gesserat. Virg.*

Num. 63 and 64. These two Rules may be thus expressed;

1. Nouns that denote a precise TERM of TIME are put in the Ablative.

2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of Time are put in the Accusative or Ablative.

De Ablativo absoluto.

R E G. XV.

65* SUBSTANTIVUM

S cum Participio, quorum Casus à nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in Ablativo absoluto; ut,

^a Sole ^b oriente fugiunt tenebræ.

^a Opere ^b peracto ludemus.

III. Constructio Vocum Indeclinabilium.

1. Adverbiorum.

66* 1. **A**DVERBIA quædam temporis,

Of the Ablative absolute.

R U L E XV.

A SUBSTANTIVE with a Participle, whose Case depends upon no other Word, are put in the Ablative absolute; as,

The Sun rising [or, while the Sun riseth] Darkneis flies away.

Our Work being finished [or, when our Work is finished] we will play.

III. The Construction of Words Indeclinable.

1. ADVERBS.

1. **S**OME Adverbs of Time, Place, and loci,

Num. 65. NOTE 1. This Ablative is called ABSOLUTE or Independent, because it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for if the Substantive (which is principally to be regarded) hath a Word before, that should govern it, or a Verb coming after, to which it should be a Nominative, then the Rule does not take Place.

NOTE 2. That Having, Being, or a Word ending in ing, are the ordinary Signs of this Ablative.

NOTE 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true Substantive) when a Participle perfect is Englished by HAVING, we are carefully to advert, whether it is Passive or Deponent. If it is Passive, we are to change it into BEING, its true English. If it is Deponent, there needs no change, for HAVING is the proper English of it. The Use of this Note will appear by the following Example.

James having said these Things, } *Jacobus hæc locutus abiit.* Dep.

James, these Things being said, } *Jacobus his dictis abiit.* Pass.

Having promised a great Reward, } *Pollicitus magnam mercedem.* Dep.

A great Reward being promised, } *Magna mercede promissa.* Pass.

NOTE 4. That when there is no Participle expressed in Latin, existens [being] is understood; as, *Me puero*, I being a Boy. *Saturno Rege*, Saturn being King. *Civitote nondum libera*, The State not being yet free.

NOTE 5. That the Participle may be resolved into *Dum*, *cum*, *quando*, *si*, *postquam*, &c. [While, seeing, when, if, after] with the Verb, either in English or Latin.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 97

oci, & quantitatis, regunt Genitivum; ut,

^a *Pridie illius* ^b *die.*

^a *Ubique* ^b *gentium.*

^a *Satis est* ^b *verborum.*

* 2. Quædam Adverbia derivata regunt Casum primitivorum; ut,

^b *Omnium* ^a *elegantissime loquitur.*

Vivere ^a *convenienter* ^b *natura.*

2. Præpositionum.

P RÆPOSITIONES *Ad, apud, ante, &c.*

Accusativum regunt; ut,

^a *Ad* ^b *patrem.*

2. Præpositiones *A, ab, abs, &c.* regunt Ablativum; ut,

^a *A* ^b *patre.*

3. Præpositiones *In, sub, super, & subter,* regunt Accusativum cum motus ad locum significatur; ut,

Eo ^a *in* ^b *scholam.*

^a *Sub* ^b *mœnia tendit,* Virg.

Incidit ^a *super* ^b *agmina,* Id.

Ducit ^a *subter* ^b *fastigia tecti,* Id.

¶ At si motus vel quies in loco significetur, *In* & *sub* regunt Ablativum; *Super* & *subter* vel Accusativum vel Ablativum; ut,

Sedeo vel discurre ^a *in* ^b *scholâ.*

Recubo vel ambulo ^a *sub* ^b *umbrâ.*

Sedens ^a *super* ^b *arma,* Virg.

Fronde ^a *super* ^b *viridi.* Id.

Quantity, govern the Genitive; as,

The Day before that Day.

Every where.

There's enough of Words.

2. Some Derivative Adverbs govern the Case of their Primitives; as,

He speaks the most elegantly of all.

To live agreeably to Nature.

2. OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. **T** HE Prepositions *Ad, 68*

apud, ante, &c. govern the Accusative; as,

To the Father.

2. The Prepositions *A, ab, 69*

abs, &c. govern the Ablative; as,

From the Father.

3. The Prepositions, *In, 70*

sub, super, and subter, govern the Accusative when Motion to a Place is signified; as,

I go into the School.

He goes under the Walls.

It fell upon the Troops.

He brings [him] under the Roof of the House.

¶ But if Motion or Rest in a Place be signified, *In* and *sub* govern the Ablative; *Super* and *subter* either the Accusative or Ablative; as,

I sit or run up and down in the School.

I lie or walk under the Shadow.

Sitting above the Arms.

Upon the green Grass.

Vena^a *subter*^b *cutem* *dis-*
persæ, Plin.

^a *Subter*^b *littore*, Catull.

The Veins dispersed under
the Skin.

Beneath the Shore.

72 4. ¶ *Præpositio* in compo-
sitione eundem sæpe casum
regit quem extra; ut,

^a *Adeamus*^b *scholam*.

^a *Exeamus*^b *scholâ*.

4. ¶ *A Preposition* oft time
governs the same Case in Com-
position that it does without it
as,

Let us go to the School.

Let us go out of the School.

3. *Interjectionum*

¶ The Prepositions, with the Cases they govern,
are contained in these Verses.

1. Hæ quantum adsciscunt casum sibi præposituræ;
Ad, *penes*, *adversum*, *cis*, *citra*, *adversus*, & *extra*,
Ultra, *post*, *præter*, *juxta*, *per*, *pone*, *secundum*,
Erga, *apud*, *ante*, *secus*, *trans*, *supra*, *propter*, & *intra*,
Quis addas *contra*, *circum*, *circa*, *inter*, *ob*, *infra*.
2. Hæ sextum poscunt; *A*, *cum*, *tenus*, *abs*, *ab*, & *absque*,
Atque *palam*, *pro*, *præ*, *clam*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *sine*, *coram*.
3. *Sub*, *super*, *in*, *subter*, quantum sextumque requirunt.

NOTE. 1. That *Versus* and *Usque* are put after their Cases; as, *Italianus versus*, Towards Italy; *Oceanum usque*, As far as the Ocean. But (as we have already observed, p. 67.) these are properly *Adverbs*, the *Prepositions* *AD* being understood.

NOTE. 2. That *Tenus* is also put after its Case; as, *Mento tenus*, Up to the Chin.

NOTE. 3. That *Tenus* governs the *Genitive Plural*, 1. When the Word wants the *Singular*; as *Cumarum tenus*, As far as [the Town] *Cuma*. 2. When we speak of things of which we have naturally but two; as, *Crurum tenus*, Up to the Legs.

NOTE. 4. That *A* and *E* are put before *Consonants*; *Ab* and *Ex* before *Vowels* and *Consonants*; *Abs* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE. 5. That *subter* hath very rarely the *Ablat.* and only among Poets.

NOTE. 6. That in English, *IN* is commonly the Sign of the *Ablative* INTO of the *Accusative*.

NOTE. 7. *IN* for *erga*, *contra*, *per*, *supra*, *ad*, &c. governs the *Accusative* as, *Amor in patriam*. *Quid ego in te commisi?* *Crescit in dies singulos*. *Imperium regum in proprios greges*, Horat. *Pisces in cœnam empti*. But *IN* for *inter* governs the *Ablative*; as, *In amicis habere*, Sallust.

SUB for *circa* governs the *Accusative* as, *Sub cœnam*.

SUPER for *ultra*, *præter*, and *inter*, governs the *Accusative* as, *Super Gramantas*, Virg. *Super gratiam suam*, Sallust. *In sermone super cœnam nata*, Suet. For *de* it governs the *Ablative* as, *Super hac re nimis*, Cic.

Num. 72. NOTE, That this Rule only takes place when the *Preposition* may be dissolved from the Verb, and put before the Case by itself as, *Alloquor patrem*, i. e. *Loquor ad patrem*. And even then the *Preposition* is frequently repeated; as, *Exire e sinibus suis*, Cæs.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 99

3. Interjectionum.

1. INTERJECTIONES

I O, heu, & proh, regunt Vocativum, interdum Accusativum; ut,

^a O ^b formose ^b puer.

^a Heu ^b me miserum!

* 2. Hei & Væ regunt Dativum; ut,

^a Hei ^b mihi!

^a Væ ^b vobis.

4. Conjunctionum.

1. CONJUNCTIONES

Et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, & quædam alie, connectunt similes Casus & Modos; ut,

Honora ^b patrem ^a & ^b matrem.

Nec ^b scribit, ^a nec ^b legit.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam, & dummodo, Subjunctivo Modo ferè semper adherent; ut,

Lego ^a ut ^b discam.

^a Utinam ^b sapires.

3. OF INTERJECTIONS.

1. THE Interjections O, 73

Heu, and Proh, govern the Vocative, and sometimes the Accusative; as,
O fair Boy.

Ah Wretch that I am!

2. Hei and Væ govern the Dative; as,

Ah me!

Wo to you.

4. OF CONJUNCTIONS.

1. THE Conjunctions Et, 75

ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, and some others, couple like Cases and Moods; as,

Honour your Father and Mother.

He neither writes nor reads.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam, and dummodo, are for the most part joined with the Subjunctive Mood; as,

I read that I may learn,

I wish you were wise.

N 2

SYNTAXEOS

Num. 75. To these add *Quam, nisi, præterquam, an,* and *Adverbs of Likeness.* The Reason of this Construction is, because the Words so coupled depend all upon the same Word, which is exprest to one of them, and understood to the other.

Num. 76. To these add all indefinite Words, that is, *Interrogatives,* whether Nouns, Pronouns, Adverbs, or Conjunctions, when taken in a doubtful or indefinite Sense, Such as, *Quis, uter, quantus, &c. Ubi, quo, unde, &c. Cur, quare, quomobrem, num, an, anne, &c.* (See Page 65. and 70.) They generally become *Indefinites,* when another Word comes before them in the Sentence, such as, *Scio, nescio, video, intelligo, dubito,* and the like; as, *Ubi est frater tuus? Nescio ubi sit. An venturus est? Dubito an venturus sit.*

NE, the Adverb of Forbidding, requires the Imperative or Subjunctive; as, *Ne time, or ne timeas.* See Page 47.

Dum, quam, quod, si, ni, sin, nisi, etsi, etiamsi, priusquam, simulac, siquidem, quandoquidem, &c. are joined sometimes with the Indicative, and sometimes with the Subjunctive.

SYNTAXEOS Synopsis.

Sive,

Genuinæ & maximè necessaria Constructionis Regulæ, ad quas ceteræ omnes reducuntur.

AXIOMATA.

I. **O**MNIS Oratio constat ex Nomine & Verbo.

II. Omnis Nominativus habet suum verbum expressum vel suppressum.

III. Omne verbum finitum habet suum Nominativum expressum vel suppressum.

IV. Omne Adjectivum habet suum Substantivum expressum vel suppressum.

Sex Casuum Constructio.

I. **O**MNE Verbum finitum, expressum vel suppressum, concordat cum Nominativo, expresso vel suppresso, in Numero & Personâ ; ut,

Puer legit.

[Homines] aiunt.

Romani[coeperunt]*festinare:*

A Summary of SYNTAX.

Or,

The true and most necessary Rules of Construction, to which all the rest are reduced.

First PRINCIPLES.

I. **E**VERY Speech [or Sentence] consists of a Noun and a Verb.

II. Every Nominative hath its own Verb express'd or understood.

III. Every finite Verb hath its own Nominative express'd or understood.

IV. Every Adjective hath its own Substantive express'd or understood.

The Construction of the six Cases.

I. **E**VERY Verb of the Finite Mood, express'd or understood, agrees with its Nominative, express'd or understood, in Number and Person ; as,

The Boy reads.

They say.

The Romans made haste.

II. Omnis

II. Omnis
à Substan
presso ; u
Liber
Est [or
III. D
[i. e. cui
adimitur
Verbo e
jungitur
Dedi P
Cui de
[De
Utilis
Non es
IV. O
gitur à V
positione,
fis ; ut,
Amo L
& [a
Ad pat
Abiit [a
¶ Aut
expressus
Dicit j
Licet m
V. Om
lutè poni
quam Int
O Dav
Heus S
VI. O
tur à † P
vel suppr
A puer
Exulta

† See Pag

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 101

II. Omnis Genitivus regitur à Substantivo expreffo vel fuppreffo ; ut,

Liber fratris.

Eft [officium] patris.

III. Dativus Acquisitionis, [i. e. cui aliquid acquiritur vel adimitur] cuivis Nomini aut Verbo expreffo vel fuppreffo jungitur ; ut,

Dedi Petro.

Cui dedifti ?

[Dedi] *Petro.*

Utilis bello.

Non eft [aptus] folvendo.

IV. Omnis Accufativus regitur à Verbo activo, vel † Præpofitione, expreffis vel fuppreffis ; ut,

Amo Deum :

& [amo] *parentes.*

Ad patrem.

Abiit [ad] Londinum.

¶ Aut Infinitivo præponitur expreffus vel fuppreffus ; ut,

Dicit fe fcribere.

Licet mihi [me] effe bonum.

V. Omnis Vocativus abfolutè ponitur, additâ nonnunquam Interjectione O ; ut,

O Dave.

Heus Syre.

VI. Omnis Ablativus regitur à † Præpofitione expreffâ vel fuppreffâ ; ut,

A puero.

Exultat [præ] gaudio.

II. Every Genitive is governed by a Substantive expreff or underftood ; as,

The Book of my Brother.

It is the Duty of a Father.

III. The Dative of Acquisition [i. e. to which any thing is acquired, or from which it is taken] is joined to any Noun or Verb expreff or underftood ; as,

I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it ?

To Peter.

Profitable for war.

He is not able to pay.

IV. Every Accufative is governed by an active Verb, or a † Preposition, expreff or underftood ; as,

I love God ;

and my Parents.

To the Father.

He hath gone to London.

¶ Or is put before the Infinitive expreff or underftood ; as,

He fays that he is writing.

I may be good.

V. Every Vocative is placed abfolutely, the Interjection O being fometimes added ; as,

O Davus.

Come hither Syrus.

VI. Every Ablative is governed by a † Preposition expreff or underftood ; as,

From a Child.

He leaps for Joy.

APPENDIX.

APPENDIX.

I. OMNE Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo expresso vel suppresso, in Genere, Numero, et Casu; ut,
Bonus vir.

Triste [negotium.]

II. Substantiva significantia eandem rem conveniunt in Casu; ut,

Dominus Deus.

III. Omnis Infinitivus regitur à Verbo vel Nomine expressis vel suppressis; ut,

Cupio discere.

Dignus amari.

Populus [cœpit] *mirari.*

I. EVERY Adjective agrees with a Substantive expressed or understood, in Gender, Number, and Case; as,

A good Man.

A sad Thing.

II. Substantives signifying the same thing agree in Case; as,

The Lord God.

III. Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or Noun expressed or understood; as,

I desire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The People wondered.

EXPLANATION.

ALL Construction is either TRUE or APPARENT, or, (as Grammarians express it) JUST or FIGURATIVE. TRUE Construction is founded upon the essential Properties of Words, and is almost the same in all Languages. APPARENT Construction entirely depends upon Custom, which, either for Elegance or Dispatch, leaves out a great many Words otherwise necessary to make a Sentence perfectly full and Grammatical. The first is comprised in these few Fundamental Rules, and more fully branched out in the Larger Syntax. The other is also interspersed through the Larger Syntax, but distinguished from that which is True by an Asterisk.

The Cases mentioned in the Rules of the Larger Syntax immediately discover the Rules of this Summary to which they respectively belong; these that are True, without any Ellipsis; these that are Figurative, by having their Ellipsis supplied as follows, as they are numbered in the Margin.

To RULE II. are reduced Num. 13. supple negotium. Num. 14. and 47. sup. de causa, gratia, or in re, negotio. Num. 15. sup. e numero. Num. 21. sup. de negotio. Num. 22. and 23. sup. officium, negotium, &c. Num. 24. sup. 1. fut. taken from the Verb. 2. de causa, &c. Num. 29. sup. memoriam, notitiam, verba, &c. Num. 30. sup. de crimine, pœna, &c. Num. 35. and 36. sup. pro re, or pretio aris. Num. 40. sup. inter negotia, and res [feri] se ad negotia. Num. 42. sup. res, negotium, &c. Num. 56. sup. in urbe. Num. 60. Domi, sup. in adibus. Num. 66. these Adverbs seem to be taken for Substantive Nouns.

To RULE III. is reduced Num. 73. sup. malum est; or these Interjections are used as Substantives.

To

To R
quod ad.
mea negoti
sup. sentio

To R
pra. Num
Num.

55. sup.
sup. in.

or pro. I
NOTE,

Gerunds, a
in them.

NOTE,
geniously

a Verb, an
ple existens

reis. Dign
NOTE,

Case by wh
when the V

Nominative
already exp

NOTE,
rily requir

ius, lib. IV

EXPOSIT
E placing
proper Order

I. A SEN

1. A SIM

2. A COM

in it joined
These CO

Comparative

3. Indefinite

In a Simplic

tial. 2. Its

1. The E

2. The A

the Vocative a
to introduce a
fore; as, Jan
the general a
and these are

Part III. Chap. II. of Resolution. 103

To RULE IV. belong Num. 18. 53. and 62. sup. ad. Num. 33. sup. quod ad. Num. 41. i. e. *Est inter mea negotia; Refert [or res fert] se ad mea negotia, &c.* Num. 58. sup. ad or in. Num. 64. sup. per. Num. 73. sup. sentio, lugeo, &c.

To RULE VI. belong Num. 12. sup. e, ex, or cum. Num. 19. sup. præ. Num. 20. sup. de, e, ex, cum, &c. Num. 21. sup. a, ab, &c.

Num. 34. sup. pro. Num. 37. 38. sup. a, ab, de, e, ex. Num. 51. and 55. sup. præ, cum, a, ab, e, ex, &c. Num. 54. sup. in or de. Num. 57. sup. in. Num. 59. sup. a, ab, e, ex. Num. 62. sup. in. Num. 64. sup. in or pro. Num. 65. sup. sub, cum, a, ab.

NOTE, 1. That under Verbs must also be comprehended Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, because the general Signification of Verbs is included in them.

NOTE, 2. That as a Consequence of this a learned Grammarian ingeniously supposes that the Dative and Infinitive are always governed by a Verb, and that when they seem to be governed by a Noun, the Participle *existens* is understood; as *Utilis [existens] bello. Polho præsidium [existens] reis. Dignus [existens] amari.*

NOTE, 3. That the Vocative is properly no part of a Sentence, but the Case by which we excite one to hear or execute what we say. Therefore when the Vocative is put before the Imperative, as frequently happens, the Nominative TU or VOS is understood; and that even tho' these Words be already express'd in the Vocative: as, *Tu Jacobe lege, i. e. O tu Jacobe, tu lege.*

NOTE, 4. That the Vocative is sufficient to itself, and does not necessarily require the Interjection O. See Vossius, lib. VII. cap. 69. and Sanctius, lib. IV. de Ellipsi Verb. Audio & Narro.

Of Exposition or Resolution.

C H A P. II.

EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the unfolding of a Sentence, and placing all the Parts of it, whether express'd or understood, in their proper Order, that the true Sense and Meaning of it may appear.

I. A SENTENCE is either Simple or Compound.

1. A SIMPLE Sentence is that which hath one Finite Verb in it.

2. A COMPOUND Sentence is that which hath two or more such Verbs in it joined together by some Couples.

These COUPLES are of four Sorts. 1. The Relative QUI. 2. Some Comparative Words, such as, *tantus, quantus; talis, qualis; tam, quam, &c.* 3. Indefinite Words, [See Page 70, and 99.] 4. Conjunctions.

In a Simple Sentence there are two things to be considered, 1. Its Essential. 2. Its Accidental Parts.

1. The Essential Parts of a Sentence are a Nominative and a Verb.

2. The Accidental Parts are of four Kinds, 1. Such as excite Attention, as the Vocative and exciting Particles; as, *O, en, ecce, heus, &c.* 2. Such as serve to introduce a Sentence, or to shew its Dependence upon what was said before; as, *Jam, hætenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea, &c.* 3. Such as limit the general and indefinite Signification either of the Nominative or Verb, and these are Substantive Nouns. 4. Such as qualify and explain them, viz.

Adjectives,

Adjectives, Adverbs, and Prepositions, with their Cases. Sometimes a Part of a compound Sentence supplies the Place of these two last kinds of Words.

II. The Order of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.

1. *NATURAL* Order is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another, in the same Order with the Conceptions of our Minds.

2. *ARTIFICIAL* Order is when Words are so ranged as to render them most agreeable to the Ear; but so as the Sense be not thereby obscured.

III. A Sentence may be resolved from the *Artificial* into the *Natural* Order, by the following Rules:

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting, and Introductory* Words, where they are found.

2. The *NOMINATIVE*.

3. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, i. e. Words agreeing with, or governed by it, or by one another successively (till you come to the *Verb*) where they are found.

4. The *VERB*.

5. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, &c. where they are found, to the End of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are understood.

7. If the Sentence is compound, take the Parts of it severally, as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

E X A M P L E.

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis praeceptisque latere, Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewell then, my [Son] Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take Delight in such Writings and Instructions.

This Compound Sentence is resolved into these five Simple Sentences.

1. *Igitur mi [fili] Cicero, [tu] vale,* 2. & *[tu] persuade tibi te esse quidem carissimum [filium] mihi;* 3. *sed [tu] persuade tibi te] fore cariorem [filium mihi in] multo [negotio]* 4. *si [tu] latere talibus monumentis,* 5. & *[si tu latere talibus] praeceptis.*

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative* Words stand always first in a Sentence unless a *Preposition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative* Words stand immediately before the *Verb*.

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unless it is a *Preposition*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive* Mood is used in *Compound* Sentences.

NOTE, 5. That the Parts of a Compound Sentence are separated from one another by these Marks called *INTERPUNCTIONS*. 1. These that are smaller, named *Clauses*, by this Mark (,) called a *Comma*. 2. These that are greater, named *Members*, by this Mark (:) called *Colon*, or this (;) called a *Semicolon*. 3. When a Sentence is thrown in that hath little or no Connexion with the rest, it is inclosed within what we call a *Parenthesis*, marked thus ()

But when the Sentence, whether *Simple* or *Compound*, is fully ended, it is a plain *Affirmation* or *Negation*, it is closed with this Mark (.) called a *Point*. If a *Question* is asked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation*. If *Wonder* or some other sudden *Passion* is signified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiration*.

F I N I S.

P R I M A

Morum & Pietatis

P R Æ C E P T A,

V I Z.

- I. *Dicta septem sapientum è Græcis.*
- II. *Gulielmi Lillii Monita pædagogica.*
- III. *Dion. Catonis Disticha moralia.*
- IV. *Joan. Sulpitii Verulani de moribus & civilitate Puerorum Carmen.*
- V. *Rudimenta Pietatis, sive, Oratio Dominica, Symbolum Apostolicum & Decalogus; item duorum Sacramentorum, Baptismi & Sacra Cœna Domini, Institutiones.*

QUIBUS ACCESSIT

Summula CATECHISMI ad piam Juniorum Educationem apprime utilis;

I T E M,

Præcipua Capita Christianæ Religionis, desumpta è sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.

Timor Domini initium sapientiæ est, Prov. i. 7.

Pietas ad omnia utilis est, promissiones habens & presentis & future vite, 1 Tim. iv. 8.

E D I N B U R G I:

Anno Domini M DCC LXX.



Dicta SAPIENTUM è Græcis,

D. Erasmo Roterod. Interprete.

*Aurea dicta, puer, quæ sunt hîc mente reconde :
Hinc poteris magna commoditate frui.*

Dicta PERIANDRI CORINTHII.

O MNIBUS placeto. Mortalia cogita.
Bona res quies. Ne prior injuriam facias.
Periculosa temeritas. Audi quæ ad te pertinent.
Semper voluptates sunt mortales : Probrum fugito.
Honores autem immortales. Responde in tempore.
Amicis adversâ fortunâ utentibus idem esto. Ea facito quorum te non possis pœnitere.
Lucrum turpe, res pessima. Ne cui invid eas.
Quicquid promiseris facito. Oculis moderare.
Infortunium tuum celato, ne Bene meritos honora.
voluptate afficias inimicos. Spem fove.
Veritati adhæreto. Calumniam oderis.
Age quæ justa sunt. Affabilis esto.
Violentiam oderis. Cùm errâris, muta consilium.
Principibus cede. Concordiam sectare.
Voluptati tempera. Diuturnam amicitiam custodi.
A jurejurando abstine. Magistratus metue.
Pietatem sectare. Omnibus teipsum præbe.
Laudato honesta. Ne loquaris ad gratiam.
A vitiis abstine. Ne tempori credideris.
Beneficium repende. Teipsum ne negligas.
Supplicibus misericors esto. Seniores reverere.
Liberos instrue. Mortem oppete pro patria.
Sapientum utere consuetudine. Ne quavis de re doleas.
Litem oderis. Ex ingenuis liberos crea.
Bonos in pretio habeto. Sperato tanquam mortalis.
Arcanum cela. Parcito tanquam immortalis.
Cede magnis. Ne efferaris gloriâ.
Opportunitatem expectato. Largire cum utilitate.

Amic

DICTA SAPIENTUM.

3

Amicis utere.

Dilige amicos.

Mortuum ne irrideto.

Consule inculpatè.

DICTA BIAN TIS PRIENENSIS.

IN speculo teipsum contem- Quid sit autem ausculta.
plare, & si formosus appa- Priùs autem intellige; & de-
rebis, age quæ deceant for- inde ad opus accede.
mam; sin deformis, quod Ne ob divitias laudâris virum
in facie minus est, vel deest, indignum.
id morum pensato pulchri- Persuasionem cape, non vi-
tudine.

Audito multa:

Compara in adolescentia quî-
dem modestiam, in senectute
verò prudentiam.

Loquere pauca.

De Numine ne malè loquaris:

DICTA PITTACI MITYLENÆI.

QUÆ facturus es, ea ne Infortunatum ne irriseris.
dixeris; frustratus enim Audito libenter.
rideberis. Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.
Depositum redde. Ne festines loqui.
Desidiosus ne esto. Nosce teipsum.
A familiaribus in minutis re- Legibus pare.
bus læsus, feras. Voluptatem cœrce.
Amico ne maledixeris. Ne quid nimis.
Inimicum ne putes amicum. Inimicitiam solve.
Uxori dominare [*Christiane.*] Ante omnia venerare Numen.
Quæ feceris parentibus, eadem Parentes reverere.
à liberis expecta. Quæ fieri non possunt; cave
inter amicos ne fueris iudex. concupiscas.
Ne contendè cum parentibus, Uxorem ducito ex æqualibus;
etiamsi iusta dixeris. ne, si ex ditioribus duxeris,
Ne geras imperium, priusquam domines tibi pares, non af-
parere didiceris. fines.

DICTA CLEOBULI LINDII.

NE sis unquam elatus. Suspicionem abjicito.
Domus curam age. Parentes patientiâ vincè.
Libros evolve. Beneficii accepti memento.
Iustè judicato. Inferiorem ne rejicias.
Bonis benefacito. Aliena ne concupiscas.
Liberos tibi charissimos erudi. Ne teipsum præcipites in dis-
malediceantia temperato. crimen.

Res amici diligas, ac perinde Citiùs ad infortunatos amicos
 ferves ut tuas, [num. quàm ad fortunatos proficiat
 Lapis auti index, aurum homi- cere.
 Quod oderis, alteri ne feceris. Mendax calumniâ vitam cor-
 Voto nihil pretiosius. rumpit.
 Ne cui miniteris; est enim mu- Mendaces odit quisque prudens
 liebre. & sapiens.

Dicta CHILONIS LACEDÆMONII.

Nosce te ipsum. Sapientiâ utere.
 Ne cui inideas mortalia. Multitudini place.
 Temperantiam exerce. Oderis calumnias.
 Turpia fuge. Ne quid suspiceris.
 Tempori parce. Moribus probatis esto.
 Justè rem para. Ne fueris onerosus.

Dicta SOLONIS ATHENIENSIS.

Deum cole. Legibus pareto.
 Parentes reverere. Cogita quod justum est.
 Amicis succurre. Iracundiâ moderare.
 Veritatem sustineto. Virtutem laudato.
 Ne jurato. Malos odio prosequitor.

Dicta THALETIS MILESII.

Pincipem honora. Gloriam sectare.
 Amicos probato. Vitæ curam age.
 Similis tui sis. Pacem dilige.
 Nemini promittito. Laudatus esto apud omnes.
 Quod adest boni consulito. Sufurrionem ex ædibus ejice.
 A vitiis abstineto.

GULIELMI LILII *Monita pedagogica;**sive**Carmen de Moribus ad suos Discipulos.*

QUI mihi discipulus, puer, es, cupis atque doceri,
 Huc ades, hæc animo concipe dicta tuo.
 Manè citus lectum fuge, mollem discute somnum;
 Templa petas supplex, & venerare Deum.
 Attamen in primis facies sit lota manusque;
 Sint nitidæ vestes, comptaque cæsaries.
 Desidiam fugiens, cùm te schola nostra vocârit,
 Adhæs; nulla pigra sit tibi causa moræ.

De Moribus.

3

Me Præceptorem cū videris ore saluta,
Et condiscipulos ordine quosque tuos.
Tu quoque fac sedeas, ubi te sedisse iubemus;
Inque loco, nisi sis iussus abire, mane.
Ac magis ut quisque est doctrinæ munere clarus,
Hoc magis is clarâ sede lotandus erit.
Scalpellum, calami, atramentum, charta, libelli,
Sint semper studiis arma parata tuis.
Si quid dictabo, scribes; at singula rectè:
Nec macula, aut scriptis menda sit ulla tuis.
Sed tua nec laceris dictata aut carmina chartis
Mandes, quæ libris inseruisse decet.
Sæpe recognoscas tibi lecta, animoque revolvās:
Si dubites, nunc hos consule, nunc alios.
Qui dubitat, qui sæpe rogat, mea dicta tenebit;
Is qui nil dubitat, nil capit inde boni.
Disce, puer, quæso; noli dediscere quicquam:
Ne mens te insimulet conscia desidii.
Sisque animo attentus: quid enim docuisse juvabit,
Si mea non firmo pectore verba premas?
Nil tam difficile est, quod non solertia vincat:
Invigila, & parta est gloria militiæ.
Nam veluti flores tellus, nec semina profert,
Ni sit continuo victa labore manūs:
Sic puer, ingenium si non exercitet, ipsum
Tempus et amittit, spem simul ingenii.
Est etiam semper lex in sermone tenenda,
Ne nos offendat improba garrulitas.
Incumbens studio, submissâ voce loqueris;
Nobis dum reddis, voce canorus eris.
Et quæcunque mihi reddes, discantur ad unguem;
Singula et abjecto verbula redde libro.
Nec verbum quicquam dicturo fuggerat ullum;
Quod puero exitium non mediocre parit.
Si quicquam rogitō, sic respondere studebis,
Ut laudem dictis & mereare decus.
Non linguâ celerî nimis, aut laudabere tardâ;
Est virtus medium, quod tenuisse juvat.
Et quoties loqueris, memor esto loquere Latine;
Et veluti scopulos barbara verba fuge.
Præterea socios, quoties te cunque rogabunt,
Instrue; & ignaros ad mea vota trahe.

Qui

6 GUL. LILII *Carmen*, &c.

Qui docet indoctos, licet indoctissimus esset,
 Ipse brevi reliquis doctior esse queat.
 Sed tu nec stolidos imitabere Grammaticastros,
 Ingens Romani dedecus eloquii:
 Quorum tam fatuus nemo, aut tam barbarus ore est,
 Quem non auctorem barbara turba probet.
 Grammaticas rectè si vis cognoscere leges,
 Discere si cupias cultius ore loqui:
 Addiscas veterum clarissima scripta virorum,
 Et quos auctores turba Latina docet.
 Nunc te Virgilius, nunc ipse Terentius optat,
 Nunc simul amplecti te Ciceronis opus:
 Quos qui non didicit, nil præter somnia vidit,
 Certat & in tenebris vivere Cimmeriis.
 Sunt quos delectat (studio virtutis honestæ
 Posthabito) nugis tempora conterere:
 Sunt quibus est cordi, manibus, pedibusve sodales,
 Aut alio quovis sollicitare modo:
 Est alius, qui se dum clarum sanguine jactat,
 Insulso reliquis improbat ore genus.
 Te tam prava sequi nolim vestigia morum;
 Ne tandem factis præmia digna feras.
 Nil dabis, aut vendes, nil permutabis emesve,
 Ex damno alterius commoda nulla feres.
 Insuper & nummos, irritamenta malorum,
 Mitte aliis; puerum nil nisi pura decent.
 Clamor, rixa, joci, mendacia, furta, cachinni,
 Sint procul a vobis; Martis & arma procul.
 Nil penitus dices, quod turpe, aut non sit honestum:
 Est vitæ ac pariter janua lingua necis.
 Ingens crede nefas cuiquam maledicta referre,
 Jurare aut magni nomina sacra Dei.
 Denique servabis res omnes atque libellos,
 Et tecum, quoties isque redisque, feres.
 Effuge vel causas faciunt quæcunque nocentem,
 In quibus & nobis displicuisse potes.

DIONYSII

Recogn
 D. E
 Casti

Qu
 er
 rum opi
 norem c
 sto more
 ut intell

Itaque
 Paren
 Cognato
 Magistr
 Datum s
 Foro te p
 Cum bon
 Ad confis
 tequan
 Mundus e
 Saluta lib
 Majori ce
 Minori pa
 Rem tuan
 Verecund
 Diligentia
 Libros leg
 Quæ leger
 Familiam
 Blandus e
 Irasci ab r
 Neminem
 Miserum r

DIONYSII CATONIS

Disticha de Moribus, ad filium:

*Recognita de novo ad Metaphrasin Jos. Scalligeri, ejusdemque
D. Erasmi, P. Schriverii & M. Zuer. Buxhornii Notas &
Castigationes, à T. R.*

In usum scholarum.

*Illis quæ cecinit Themis aut Thymbræus Apollo,
Non canit hisce catus deteriora Cato.*

Præfatio cum brevissimis Præceptis.

QUum animadverterem quàm plurimos homines graviter errare in viâ morum, succurrendum & consulendum eorum opinioni existimavi, maxime ut gloriosè viverent, & honorem contingerent. Nunc te (fili charissime) docebo, quo pacto mores animi tui componas. Igitur præcepta mea ita legito, ut intelligas: Legere enim, et non intelligere, negligere est.

ITaque Deo supplica.

Parentes ama.

Cognatos cole.

Magistrum metue.

Datum serva.

Foro te para.

Cum bonis ambula.

Ad consilium ne accesseris, an-
tequam voceris.

Mundus esto.

Saluta libenter.

Majori cede.

Minori parce.

Rem tuam custodi.

Verecundiam serva.

Diligentiam adhibe.

Libros lege.

Quæ legeris memento.

Familiam cura.

Blandus esto.

Iraisci ab re noli.

Neminem irriseris.

Miserum ne irriseris.

Mutuum dato.

Cui des videto.

In judicium adesto.

Conjugem ama.

Liberos erudi.

Patere legem quam ipse tuleris.

Pauca in convivio loquere.

Convivare raro.

Quod satis est dormi.

Jusjurandum serva.

Vino te tempera.

Pugna pro patria.

Nil temere credideris.

Tu te consule.

Meretricem fuge.

Literas disce.

Nihil mentiri debes.

Bonis benefacito.

Maledicus ne esto.

Existimationem retine.

Æquum judica.

Parentes patientiâ vince.

Beneficii

Beneficii accepti memor esto.

Ad prætorium statò.

Consultus esto.

Utere virtute.

Iracundiam tempera.

Trocho lude.

Aleas fuge.

Nihil ex arbitrio virium feceris.

Minorem te ne contempseris.

Aliena concupiscere noli.

Illud stude quod justum est.

Amorem libenter ferto.

DISTICHORUM de Moribus.

LIBER I.

Dei cultus præcipuus.

SI Deus est animus, nobis ut carmina dicunt,
Hic tibi præcipue sit purâ mente colendus.

Somnolentia vitanda.

Plus vigila semper, nec somno deditus esto :
Nam diuturna quies vitiis alimenta ministrat.

Cabibenda lingua.

Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam ;
Proximus ille Deo, qui scit ratione tacere.

Sibi ipsi conveniendum.

Sperne repugnando tibi tu contrarius esse ;
Conveniet nulli qui secum diffidet ipse.

Nemo temere culpandus.

Si vitam inspicias hominum, si denique mores,
Cum culpas alios ; nemo sine crimine vivit.

Utilitas divitiis anteponenda.

Quæ nocitura tenes, quamvis sint chara, relinque :
Utilitas opibus præponi tempore debet.

Mores pro tempore mutandi.

Et † levis et constans, ut res expostulat, esto :
Temporibus mores sapiens sine crimine mutat.

Uxori non semper assentiendum.

Nil temere uxori de servis crede querenti :
Sæpe etenim mulier, quem conjunx diligit, odit.

Instandum correctioni amici.

Cumque mones aliquem, nec se velit ipse moneri,
Si tibi sit charus, noli desistere cæptis.

Stulti verbis non vincuntur.

Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis :
Sermo datur cunctis, animi sapientia paucis.

Amicus sibi quisque primas.

Dilige sic alios, ut sis tibi charus amicus,
Sic bonus esto bonis, ne te mala damna sequantur,

† al. Con-
stans aut le-
vis, repug-
nante metro.

LIBER I.

9

Rumores spargere vetitum.

Rumores fuge, ne incipias novus auctor haberi:
Nam nulli tacuisse nocet, nocet esse locutum.

Fides aliena non promittenda.

Rem tibi promissam certò promittere noli:
Rara fides ideo est, quia multi multa loquuntur.

Judex quisque sit sui.

Cùm te aliquis laudat, judex tuus esse memento:
Plus aliis de te, quàm tu tibi credere noli.

Beneficiorum ratio.

Officium alterius multis narrare memento:
Atque aliis cùm tu benefeceris, ipse fileto.

Senio bene gesta referenda.

Multorum cùm facta senex & dicta recenset,
Fac tibi succurrant, juvenis quæ feceris ipse.

Suspicionis labe.

Ne cures si quis tacito fermone loquatur:
Conscius ipse sibi de se putat omnia dici.

In prosperis de adversis cogitandum.

Cùm fueris felix, quæ sunt adversa caveto:
Non eodem cursu respondent ultima primis.

Mors alterius non speranda.

Cùm dubia & fragilis sit nobis vita tributa,
In morte alterius spem tu tibi ponere noli.

Animus in dono æstimandus.

Exiguum munus cùm dat tibi pauper amicus,
Accipito placidè, plenè & laudare memento.

Paupertas toleranda.

Infantem nudum cùm te natura creârit,
Paupertatis onus patienter ferre memento.

Mors non formidanda.

Ne timeas illam, quæ vitæ est ultima finis:
Qui mortem metuit, quod vivit perdit id ipsum.

Amicorum ingratitude fugienda.

Si tibi pro meritis nemo respondet amicus,
Incusare Deum noli, sed te ipse coërce.

Frugalitas.

Ne tibi quid desit, quæsitis utere parcè:
Utque quod est serves, semper tibi deesse putato.

Promissio iterata molesta.

Quod præstare potes, ne bis promiseris ulli:
Ne sis ventosus, dum vis bonus ipse videri.

Ars arte deludenda.

Qui simulat verbis, nec corde est fidus amicus:
Tu quoque fac simile; sic ars deluditur arte.

P

Blandiloquentia

Blandoliquentia suspecta.

Noli homines blando nimium sermone probare :
Fistula dulcè canit, volucrum dum decipit auceps.

Liberi artibus instruendi.

Cùm tibi sint nati, nec opes ; tunc artibus illos
Instrue, quò possint inopem defendere vitam.

Res quomodo aestimanda.

Quod vile est, carum ; quod carum est, vile putato :
Sic tibi nec cupidus, nec avarus habebereis ulli.

Culpata non facienda.

Quæ culpæ soles, ea tu ne feceris ipse :
Turpe est doctori cùm culpa redarguit ipsum.

Concedenda petenda.

Quod iustum est petito, vel quod videatur honestum :
Nam stultum est petere id quod possit iure negari.

Nota ignotis non commutanda.

Ignotum tibi tu noli præponere notis :
Cognita iudicio constant, incognita casu.

Dies quisque supremus putandus.

Cùm dubia incertis versetur vita periclis,
Pro lucro tibi pone diem † quocunque laboras.

Obsecundandum amicis.

Vincere cum possis, interdum cede sodali :
Obsequio quoniam dulces retinentur amici.

Amicitia mutua officia.

Ne dubites, cùm magna petas, impendere parva :
His etenim rebus conjungit gratia charos.

Amicitia rixas odit.

Lite inferre cave cum quo tibi gratia juncta est :
Ira odium generat, concordia nutrit amorem.

Castigatio sine ira.

Servorum ob culpam cùm te dolor urget in iram,
Ipse tibi moderare, tuis ut parcere possis.

Patientia vincendum.

Quem superare potes, interdum vince ferendo :
Maxima enim morum semper patientia virtus.

Quæ sita sunt servanda.

Conserva potiùs, quæ sunt jam parta labore :
Cum labor in damno est, crescit mortalis egestas.

Consulendum sibi in primis.

Dapfiliis interdum notis, & charus amicis :
Cum fueris felix, semper tibi proximus esto.

† al. qui.
cunque.

T

Herba
Corpor
Si Rom
Lucan
Si quis
Nafone
Ut sapi
Per qu
Ergo a

S I po
Ut

Mitte a
Cùm sis

Linque
Dum mo

Iratus d
Impedit

Fac sum
Dandum

Quod ni
Tuto ma

Quod pu
Ne plure

Nolo put
Tempori

Corporis
Consilio

Cui sciêr
Victorem

LIB. II. PRÆFATIO.

TELLURIS si fortè velis cognoscere cultus,
 Virgilium legito. Quòd si mage nòsse laboras
 Herbarum vires, Macer has tibi carmine dicet,
 Corporis ut cunctos possis depellere morbos.
 Si Romana cupis & civica noscere bella
 Lucanum quæras, qui Martis prælia dixit.
 Si quis amare velis, vel discere amare legendo,
 Nasonem petito. Sin autem cura tibi hæc est,
 Ut sapiens vivas, audi quæ discere possis,
 Per quæ semotum vitiis traducitur ævum.
 Ergo ades, & quæ sit sapientia disce legendo.

De omnibus bene merendum.

SI potes, ignotis etiam prodesse memento :
 Utilius regno est meritis acquirere amicos.

Arcana Dei non scrutanda.

Mitte arcana Dei, cælumque inquirere quid sit :
 Cùm sis mortalis, quæ sunt mortalia cura.

Mortis timor gaudia vitæ pellit.

Linque metum lethi, nam stultum est tempore in omni,
 Dum mortem metuis, amittere gaudia vitæ.

Iracundia cavenda.

Iratus de re incerta contendere noli :
 Impedit ira animum ne possit cernere verum.

Expendendum ubi opus est.

Fac sumptum properè, cùm res desiderat ipsa :
 Dandum etenim est aliquid, cùm tempus postulat aut res.

Fortuna modica tutior.

Quod nimium est fugito, parvo gaudere memento :
 Tuto mage est puppis modico quæ flumine fertur.

Occulta vitia reticenda.

Quod pudeat socios prudens celare memento ;
 Ne plures culpent id, quod tibi displicet uni.

Occulta tandem revelantur.

Nolo putes pravos homines peccata lucrari :
 Temporibus peccata latent, sed tempore † parent.

Imbecillitas virtute compensatur.

Corporis exigui vires contemnere noli :
 Consilio pollet cui vim natura negavit.

Cedendum potiori ad tempus.

Cui sciêris non esse parem te, tempore cede
 Victorem à victo superari sæpe videmus.

† i. e. ap-
 parent, vul-
 go patent,
 contra metri
 legem.

Rixandum cum familiaribus non esse.

Adversus notum noli contendere verbis :

Lis minimis verbis interdum maxima crescit.

Fortuna non quarenda sorte.

Quid Deus intendat, noli perquirere sorte :

Quid statuatur de te, sine te deliberat ipse.

Luxus odium generat.

Invidiam nimio cultu vitare memento :

Quæ si non lædit, tamen hanc sufferre molestum est.

Animus non deponendus ob iniquum iudicium.

Esto animo fortis, cum sis damnatus iniquè :

Nemo diu gaudet, qui iudice vincit iniquo.

Reconciliatis lis non refricanda.

Litis præteritæ noli maledicta referre :

Post inimicitias iram meminisse malorum est.

Teipsum neque lauda neque culpa.

Nec te collaudes, nec te culpaveris ipse :

Hoc faciunt stulti, quos gloria vexat inanis.

Parsimonia.

Utere quæsitis parcè, cum sumptus abundat :

Labitur exiguo, quod partum est tempore longo.

Supercilium nonnunquam deponendum.

Insipiens esto, cum tempus postulat, aut res :

Stultitiam simulare loco prudentia summa est.

Neque prodigus, neque avarus.

Luxuriam fugito, simul et vitare memento

Crimen avaritiæ ; nam sunt contraria famæ.

Loquaci parum credendum.

Noli tu quædam referenti credere semper :

Exigua iis tribuenda fides qui multa loquantur.

Æbrius vinum non accuset.

Quæ † potu peccas, ignoscere tu tibi noli :

Nam nullum crimen vini est, sed culpa bibentis.

Amicis consilia credenda.

Consilium arcanum tacito committe sodali :

Corporis auxilium medico committe fidei.

Successus malorum ne te offendant.

Indignos noli succensus ferre molestè :

Indulget fortuna malis ut lædere possit.

Futuros casus prævidendos.

Prospice, qui veniunt, hos casus esse ferendos :

Nam levius lædit, quicquid prævidimus antè.

Animus in adversis spe fovendus.

Rebus in adversis animum submittere noli :

Spem retine : spes una hominem nec morte relinquit.

Opportunitas

Rem
Front

Quod
illum

Fortiù
Pauca

Judiciu
Ne nul

Sit tibi
Tempo

Somnia
Dum vi

Hoc
Commo
Non me

Instrue
Nam

Fortunæ
Non opib

Cum rect
Arbitrii r

Productu
Quantum

Sermones
Simplicita

Segnitie
Nam cum

Interpone
t possis a

Opportunitas cum contingit tenenda.

Rem tibi quam noscis aptam, dimittere noli :
Fronte capillatâ, post est occasio calva.

Futura ex præteritis colligenda.

Quod sequitur spectâ, quodque imminet antè videtò :
Illum imitare deum, qui partem spectat utramque.

Vita ratio habenda.

Fortiùs ut valeas, interdum parcior esto :
Pauca voluptati debentur, plura saluti.

Multitudini cedendum.

Judicium populi nunquam contempseris unus :
Ne nulli placeas, dum vis contemnere multos.

Valetudo curanda.

Sit tibi præcipuè, quod primum est, cura salutis :
Tempora ne culpes, cùm sis tibi causa doloris.

Somnia non observanda.

Somnia ne cures : nam mens humana quod optat,
Dum vigilans sperat, per somnum cernit id ipsum.

LIB. III. PRÆFATIO.

HOC quicumque voles carmen cognoscere, lector,
Quum præcepta ferat quæ sunt gratissima vitæ,
Commoda multa feres. Sin autem spreveris illud,
Non me scriptorem, sed te neglexeris ipse.

Dandam esse operam literis.

Instrue præceptis animum, nec discere cesses :
Nam sine doctrina vita est quasi mortis imago.

Moribus captanda fama.

Fortunæ donis semper parere memento :
Non opibus bona fama datur, sed moribus ipsis.

Recte agendo aliorum linguam ne timeas.

Cùm rectè vivas, ne cures verba malorum :
Arbitrii nostri non est quod quisque loquatur.

Amici crimen celandum.

Productus testis, salvo tamen antè pudore,
Quantumcunque potes, celato crimen amici.

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

Sermones blandos blæfosque cavere memento :
Simplicitas veri † sana est, fraus ficta loquendi.

Ignavia vita fugienda.

Segnitiam fugito, quæ vitæ ignavia fertur :

Nam cùm animus languet, consumit inertia corpus.

Animus fessus relaxandus.

Interpone tuis interdum gaudia curis :

Ut possis animo quemvis sufferre laborem.

† Scal. fama,
i. e. indicium.
al. norma.

Malo animo neminem reprehendas.

Alterius dictum, aut factum, ne carpseris unquam :
Exemplo simili ne te derideat alter.

Hereditas augenda.

Quod tibi fors dederit tabulis suprema notato,
Augendo serva ; ne sis quem fama loquatur.

Senectus sit munifica.

Cum tibi divitiæ superant in fine senectæ ;
Munificus facito vivas, non parvus amicis.

Verba attendenda, non os liquentis.

Utile consilium dominus ne despice servi,
Nullius sensum, si prodest, tempseris unquam.

Præsenti utendum fortuna.

Rebus & in censu si non est quod fuit antè,
Fac vivas contentus eo quod tempora præbent.

Uxor spe dotis non quærenda.

Uxorem fuge, ne ducas sub nomine dotis :
Nec retinere velis, si cœperit esse molesta.

Alieno sapere exemplo.

Multorum disce exemplo quæ facta sequaris,
Quæ fugias : vita est nobis aliena magistra.

Nihil ultra vires.

Quod potes, id tentes ; operis ne pondere pressus
Succumbat labor, & frustra tentata relinquas.

Consentire videtur qui tacet.

Quod nôsti haud rectè factum, nolito filere :
Ne videre malos imitari velle tacendo.

Rigor favore temperandus.

Judicis auxilium sub iniqua lege rogato :
Ipsæ etiam leges cupiunt ut jure regantur.

Feras quæ tua culpa pateris.

Quod meritò pateris, patienter ferre memento :
Cumque reus tibi sis, ipsum te iudice damna.

Multa legenda, sed cum judicio.

Multa legas facito : perlectis † perlege multa : † al. neglig.
Nam miranda canunt, sed non credenda poëtæ.

Modeste in convivio loquendum.

Inter convivas fac sis sermone modestus :
Ne dicare loquax, dum vis urbanus haberi.

Iracundia uxoris non formidanda.

Conjugis iratæ nolito verba timere :
Nam lachrymis struit insidias, dum fœmina plorat.

Quæstis utendum, non abutendum.

Utere quæsitis, sed ne videaris abuti :
Qui sua consumunt, cum deest, aliena sequuntur.

Mors non formidanda.

Fac tibi proponas mortem non esse timendam :
Quæ bona si non est, finis tamen illa malorum est.

Uxor proba, si loquax, ferenda.

Uxoris linguam, si frugi est, ferre memento :
Namque malum est te nolle pati, hanc non posse tacere.

Pietas erga parentes.

Æquâ diligito charos pietate parentes :
Nec matrem offendas, dum vis bonus esse parenti.

LIB. IV. PRÆFATIO.

SECURAM quicunque cupis traducere vitam,
Nec vitiis hædere animum, quæ moribus obsunt ;
Hæc præcepta tibi semper relegenda memento ;
Invenies aliquid quod † te nitare magistro.

† al. quo vitæ utare. al. tu te utare.

Divitiarum contemptus.

DESPICE divitias, si vis animo esse beatus ;
Quas qui suspiciunt, mendicant semper avari.

Vivere secundum naturam optimum.

COMMODA naturæ nullo tibi tempore deerunt,
Si contentus eo fueris quod postulat usus.

Res ratione regenda.

CUM sis incautus, nec rem ratione gubernes,
Noli fortunam, quæ † nulla est, dicere cæcam.

† al. non est.

Amor pecuniæ ad usum.

DILIGE † denarium, sed parcè dilige formam,
Quam nemo sanctus, nec honestus captat † habere.

† al. denari.

† al. ab ære.

In valitudine ne opibus parcas.

QUUM fueris locuples, corpus curare memento :
Eger dives habet nummos, * sed non habet ipsum, * al. sc.

Castigatio paterna ferenda.

VERBERA cùm tuleris discens aliquando magistri,
Per patris imperium, cùm verbis exit in iram.

Certa & utilia agenda.

RES age quæ profunt : rursus vitare memento
In quibus error inest, nec spes est certa laboris.

Libenter donandum.

QUOD donare potes, gratis † concede roganti :
Nam rectè fecisse bonis, in parte † lucrosum est.

† al. ne vende.

† al. lucrorum.

Suspicio statim expendenda.

QUOD tibi suspectum est, confestim discute quid sit :
Namque solent primò quæ sunt neglecta, nocere.

Venus abstinencia cohibenda.

CUM te detineat Veneris damnosa voluptas,
Indulgere gulæ noli, quæ ventris amica est.

Homo malus, fera pessima.

Cùm tibi proponas animalia cuncta timere,
Unum hominem tibi præcipio plus esse timendum.

Sapientia fortitudini preferenda.

Cùm tibi prævalidæ fuerint in corpore vires,
Fac sapias ; sic tu poteris vir fortis haberi.

Amicus cordis medicus.

Auxilium à notis petito, si fortè laboras ;
Nec quisquam melior medicus, quàm fidus amicus.

Sacrificium spiritus dejectus.

Cùm sis ipse nocens, moritur cur victima pro te ?
Stultitia est morte alterius sperare salutem.

Amicus ex moribus deligendus.

Cùm tibi vel focium, vel fidum quæris amicum,
Non tibi fortuna est hominis, sed vita petenda.

Avaritia vitanda.

Uttere quæsitis opibus ; fuge nomen avari :
Quid tibi divitiæ profunt, si pauper abundas ?

Voluptas inimica famæ.

Si famam servare cupis, dum vivis, honestam ;
Fac fugias animo, quæ sunt mala gaudia vitæ.

Senem etiam delirum ne irriseris.

Cùm sapias animo noli irridere senectam :
Nam quicumque fenet, sensus puerilis in illo est.

Opes fluxæ, ars perpetua.

Disce aliquid ; nam cùm subito fortuna recessit,
Ars remanet, vitamque hominis non deserit unquam.

Mores ex verbis cogniti.

Perspicio tecum tacitus, quid quisque loquatur :
Sermo etenim mores & celat & indicat idem.

Ars usu juvonda.

Exerce studium, quamvis perceperis artem :
Ut cura ingenium, sic & manus adjuvat usum.

Vita contemptus.

Multùm ne cures venturi tempora fati :
Non metuit mortem qui scit contemnere vitam.

Discendum & docendum.

Disce, sed à doctis : indoctos ipse doceto :
Propaganda etenim rerum doctrina bonarum est.

Bibendi ratio.

Hoc bibe quod possis, si tu vis vivere sanus :
Morbi causâ mali nimia est † quandoque voluptas.

Ne damnes quod probaveris.

Laudâris quodcunque palàm, quodcunque probâris,
Hoc vide ne rursus levitatis crimine damnes.

† al. quæ-
cunque.

Circumspectus

Tranq
Rursus

Discere
Rara d

Parcè
Una di

Ne pud
Scire al

Cum V
Quod b

Demissio
Quâ flur

Cùm tib
Alterius

Quod po
Tutius e

Contra h
Semper e

Ereptis o
Sed gaud

Est iactur
Sunt quæ

Tempora
Quocunq

† Thure
Ne credas

Cede locu
Lædere qu

Cùm quid
Vulnera d

Circumspectus utraque fortuna esto.

Tranquillis rebus quæ sunt adversa † timeto : † *al. caveto.*
Rursus in adversis melius sperare memento.

Studio crescit sapientia.

Discere ne cesses ; curâ sapientia crescit :
Rara datur longo prudentia temporis usu.

Parce laudandum.

Parcè laudato ; nam quem tu sæpe probâris,
Una dies, qualis fuerit, monstrabit amicus.

Discere non pudeat.

Ne pudeat, quæ nesciêris, te velle doceri :
Scire aliquid laus est, † turpe est nil discere velle. † *al. culpa.*

Rebus utendum ad sobrietatem.

Cum Venere & Baccho lis est, sed juncta voluptas :
Quod blandum est animo complectere, sed fuge lites.

Tristibus & tacitis non fidendum.

Demissos animo, ac tacitos vitare memento :
Quâ flumen placidum est, forsan latet altiùs unda.

Sors sorti conferenda.

Cùm tibi displiceat rerum fortuna tuarum,
Alterius specta † quo sis discrimine pejor. † *al. qui sis.*

Ultra vires nihil aggrediendum.

Quod potes id tenta : nam littus carpere remis
Tutius est multò, quàm † velis tendere in altum. † *al. velum.*

Cum iusto inique non contendendum.

Contra hominem justum pravè contendere noli :
Semper enim Deus injustas ulciscitur iras.

Fortuna utraque æque ferenda.

Ereptis opibus noli tu flere querendo :
Sed gaude potius, † tibi si contingat habere. † *al. si nil.*

Ab amico quid ferendum.

Est iactura gravis, quæ sunt, amittere damnis :
Sunt quædam, quæ ferre decet patienter amicum.

Tempori non confidendum.

Tempora longa tibi noli promittere vitæ :
Quocunque ingrederis sequitur mors, corpus ut umbra.

Deus quibus placandus.

† Thure Deum placa ; vitulum sine crescat aratro : † *al. Ture.*
Ne credas placare Deum, dum cæde litatur.

A potentioribus læsus dissimula.

Cede locum læsus, fortunæ cede potenti :
Lædere qui potuit, prodesse aliquando valebit.

Castiga teipsum.

Cùm quid peccâris, castiga te ipse subinde :
Vulnera dum fanas, dolor est medicina doloris.

18 JOAN. SULPITII Carmen.

Amicus mutatus non vituperandus.

Damnâris nunquam, post longum tempus, amicum :
Mutavit mores ; sed pignora prima memento.

Beneficiis collatis attende.

Gratior officiis, quò sis magè charior, esto ;
Ne nomen fubeas quod dicitur † officiperda. † *al. officiperda.*

Suspicionem tolle.

Suspectus cave sis, ne sis miser omnibus horis :
Nam timidis & suspectis aptissima mors est.

Humanitas erga servos.

Cùm fueris famulos proprios mercatus in usus,
Ut servos dicas, homines tamen esse memento.

Occasionem rei commoda ne prætermittas.

Quamprimùm rapienda tibi est occasio prima,
Ne rursus quæras, quæ jam neglexeris antè.

Non latandum repentino obitu.

Morte repentinâ noli gaudere malorum :
Felices obeunt quorum sine crimine vita est.

Pauper simulatum vitet amicum.

Cùm tibi sit conjux, † ne res & fama labore, † *al. nec.*
Vitandum ducas inimicum nomen amici.

Junge studium.

Cùm tibi contingerit studio cognoscere multa ;
Fac discas multa, & vites † nil velle doceri. † *al. non.*

Brevitas memoria amica.

Miraris verbis nudis me scribere versus ?
Hos brevitatis sensûs fecit conjungere binos.

JOANNIS SULPITII Verulani
de Moribus & Civilitate Puerorum,
Carmen.

Q Uos decet in vita mores servare docemus,
Virtuti ut studeas, literulisque simul.
Quæ te igitur moneo, miti, puer, indole serva :
Præque tuis oculis hæc mea jussa tene.
Omnibus in rebus studeas precor esse modestus :
Sis avidus laudis, sit tibi cura boni.
Sis pius ac sanctus, nec non venerare parentes :
Et noceas nulli, furripiasque nihil.
Futilis & mendax nunquam, nec credulus esto :
Dedecus & metuas, & reverere bonos.
Improba pestiferi fugias commercia cœtûs,
Sic & honorus eris, sic eris ipse bonus.

Nec
E
Segn
Pa
Parce
At
Fidu
De
Esto
De
Nec f
Sec
Nec p
Cor
Hæc t
Spe
Nunc
Mor
Sit fin
Stir
Et nih
Sit
Lingua
Atq
Exprim
Ne t
Seu spu
Post
Mucore
Pann
Et ruct
Strin
Mundit
Utere
Non fun
Judic
Nec vos
Esse
Nec fis
Fama
Namque
Corpo

Nec maledicta refer, nec promas turpia dictu:
 Est stomachosa quidem dicere turpe tibi.
 Segnitiam fugito, quæ vitæ commoda pellit:
 Parce gulæ turpi, luxuriamque fuge.
 Parce & avaritiæ; bilem frænare memento,
 Atque animi fastus, invidiamque simul.
 Fidus sis audensque bonis; temerarius esse
 Despice: non audax sis, timidusve nimis.
 Esto verecundus: rectum te lectus habebit;
 Detege nec socium, nec tua membra, puer.
 Nec sis difficilis nimium, nimiumque severus,
 Sed bonus & blandus conspiciare, puer.
 Nec penitus mutum, nec te decet esse loquacem:
 Convenit ille toro, convenit iste foro.
 Hæc te servantem vitæ laus spesque futuræ;
 Spernentem turpis pœnaque morsque manent,
 Nunc faciles aures, animum quoque trade serenum;
 Morigerare mihi, mollia jussa dabo.
 Sit sine labe toga, & facies sit lota manusque;
 Stiria nec naso pendeat ulla tuo.
 Et nihil emineat, sint & sine fordibus ungues;
 Sit coma, sit turpi calceus absque luto.
 Linguaque non rigeat, careant rubigine dentes:
 Atque palam pudeat te fricuisse caput;
 Exprimere & pulices, scabiemque urgere nocentem;
 Ne te sordidulum, qui videt ista, vocet.
 Seu spuis, aut mungis nares, nutasve, memento
 Post tua concussum vertere terga caput.
 Mucorem haud tangas digitis, sputumve resorbas:
 Panniculo nasum mungere nempe decet.
 Et ructare cave, quin os in terga reflectas:
 Stringe os, & crepitum comprime, quæso, puer.
 Munditiæque tibi placeant; medio quoque cultu
 Utere, ne turpis vel videare levis.
 Non sum qui laudem summo te accumbere mane;
 Judice conveniens me dabit hora cibum.
 Nec vos ante focum cœnas producite longas:
 Esse decet vivas, vivere non ut edas,
 Nec sis vinosus, quamvis potasse Catonem
 Fama refert; fugias sumere vina mera.
 Namque cibus nimius, potus quoque, maxima pœna;
 Corporis & vires ingenique rapit.

20 *JOAN. SULPITII Carmen.*

Infernas mensam : nitidas imposito quadras,
 Atque salem & Cererem, flumina, vina, dapes.
 Deinde precare Deum, qui nobis cuncta benignè
 Suggestit, ut sanctos det tibi mane cibos.
 Atque, puer, jubeo, sed eas vel rarò, sed astans
 Pocula porge celer, tolle, repone dapes.
 Juraque convivas super importare, minister,
 Effuge : nam turpis sæpe fit inde toga.
 Quodque jubebit herus, facilis semperque subito ;
 Quemque tibi dederit, tu tibi sume locum.
 Et licet antiqui cubuissent pectore prono,
 Te colla hæc ætas recta tenere jubet.
 Et finito mensæ cubitis hærare potentes :
 Tu tantum faciles pone, repone manus.
 Quodque vir egregius pavido tibi porrigit, illud
 Sume lubens, grates aptaque verba refer.
 Esto tribus digitis, magnos nec sumito morsus :
 Nec duplices offas mandere utrinque juvet.
 Te vitare velim, cupidus ne ut lurco sonoras
 Contractes fauces : mandere rite decet.
 Gausape non macules, aut pectus ; nec tibi mentum.
 Stillet ; sitve tibi ne manus uncta cave.
 Sæpe ora & digitos mappâ siccabis adeptâ ;
 In quadra faciat nec tua palma moram.
 Quod tibi vicinum fuerit tu sume : sodali
 Cede tuo, referat dum tamen ille manum.
 Dumque in frustra secat, caveas sumpsisse recisa :
 Lurco legit dulces absque rubore bolos.
 Non, manibus gremio immissis, tibi velliet unguis
 Quod fumes : residens non agitato pedes.
 Incidasque prius quam dens contundat ofellam ;
 Tingantur rursus ne tibi morsa cave.
 Ne lingas digitos, nec rodas turpiter ossa,
 Ast ea cultello radere ritè potes.
 Sive super mensam cortex cumeletur, & ipsa
 Ossa, vel in quadram, præ pedibusve jace.
 Nec digitis tenta, nec pinguis delige frustra :
 Et quocunque manus, huc tibi lumen eat.
 Nec socium torvè inspicias, quidve ederit ille
 Advertas : gestus inspicere sæpe tuos.
 Pocula cum fumes, tergat tibi mappa labella :
 Si tergas manibus, non mihi charus eris.

Dum manducatis,

Una r
 † I
 Hanc
 Effi
 Ac ter
 Ple
 Deme
 Quo
 Qui fa
 Et p
 Haud
 Sibil
 Nec ci
 Nec
 Unum,
 Si hu
 Fac vic
 Crate
 Os quod
 Ablu
 Deniqu
 Qui a
 Inflecter
 Dicit

R I

V
 S
 C
 M
 R
 M
 M
 N
 A
 M
 M
 G

JOAN. SULPITII *Carmen.* 21

Una manus fumet pateram, ni hanc jactet in hostem
 † Theseus, aut Beli sint monumenta patris: † *Vid. Ovid.*
 Hanc binis quod si manibus captabis, id aptè *Met. 12. v. 35.*
 Efficies: digitis pocula sume tribus. & *Virg. Æn. 1.*
 Ac teneas oculos, nec supra pocula fare: *v. 733.*
 Plena aliquo vites sit tibi bucca cibo.
 Deme merum cyatho, multum ne fortè superfit,
 Quod nolit socius fumere fortè tuus.
 Qui sapit, extinguet multo cum fonte falernum,
 Et parco lympham diluet ille mero.
 Haud facias binos haustus, nec fessus anheles,
 Sibila nec labiis stridula prome tuis.
 Nec citò forbebis, velut ovi lutea grati:
 Nec nimium tardâ fume falerna morâ.
 Unum, five duo, ad summum tria pocula fumes:
 Si hunc numerum excedas, jam mihi potus eris.
 Fac videas quodcunque bibes, modicumque pitissa:
 Crater, five calix, det tibi vina, brevis.
 Os quoque tergebis semper post pocula: palmas
 Abblue, quum mensam deseris, atque labra.
 Denique jam grates pro donis reddito Christo,
 Qui æternas nobis præparat unus opes.
 Inflectensque genu, jungens & brachia, PROSIT,
 Dicito: mox tolles ordine quæque suo.

REGIMEN MENSÆ honorabile.

Nemo tibi capiat, donec benedictio fiat.

Dum manducatis,	Vultus hilares habea-	} tis.
	Sal cultello capia-	
	Quod edendum sit, ne peta-	
	Non nisi depositum capia-	
	Rixas & murmura fugia-	
	Manibus erectis sedea-	
	Mappam mundam tenea-	
	Ne scalpatis cavea-	
	Aliis partem tribua-	
	Morsus non rejicia-	
	Modicum sed crebrò biba-	
	Grates DEO per CHRISTUM refera-	

Privetur mensa, qui spreverit hæc documenta.

F I N I S.



RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.

In nomine Dei, Patris, Filii, & Spiritus Sancti. Amen.

ORATIO DOMINICA, *Matth.* vi.

Pater noster, qui es in cœlis, 1. Sanctificetur nomen tuum, 2. Veniat regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas tua, quemadmodum in cœlo, sic etiam in terra. 4. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita nostra, sicut & nos remittimus debitoribus nostris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera nos à malo : quia tuum est regnum, & potentia, et gloria, in secula. *Amen.*

SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

Credo in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, Creatorem cœli & terræ. 2 Et in Iesum Christum, filium ejus unigenitum, Dominum nostrum, 3. Qui conceptus est de Spiritu Sancto natus ex Maria Virgine, 4. Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus, & sepultus, descendit ad inferna ; 5. Tertio die resurrexit à mortuis, 6. Ascendit ad cœlos, sedet ad dextram Dei Patris omnipotentis ; 7. Inde venturus est judicatum vivos & mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum. 9. Credo sanctam Ecclesiam catholicam, Sanctorum communionem ; 10. Remissionem peccatorum ; 11. Carnis resurrectionem ; 12. Et vitam æternam. *Amen.*

DECALOGUS, *sive* LEX DEI.

Loquutus est DEUS omnia verba hæc. Exod. xx.

EGO sum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te ex Ægypto, à domo servitutis :

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conspectu meo.

II. Ne icipas tibi simulacrum, nec ullam imaginem effigies eorum, quæ aut supra sunt in cœlo, aut infra in terra, aut in aquis sub terra : neque incurves te illis, neque colas ea. Ego enim sum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, zelotes, vindicans

dicans
genie
nam

III.
nim D
usurpa
IV.

ris, &

Domin

tuus, i

mentu

diebus

iis funt

Sabbat

V. I

terra,

VI.

VII.

VIII

IX. M

X. N

uxorem

vem, n

S U

Phar
isse
rogavit
dicens, 3

37. I

tuum, ex

gitatione

39. Secur

mum tuu

40. Ex

Quot s

Duo.

Quæ s

Baptifi

dicans

dicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia & quarta progenie eorum qui oderunt me, & misericordiâ utens in millefinam eorum qui diligunt me, & observant præcepta mea.

III. Ne usurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temere. Neque enim Dominus dimittet eum impunitum, qui nomen ejus vanè usurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati sanctifices. Sex diebus operaberis, & facies omne opus tuum. At septimo die Sabbatum erit Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec servus tuus, nec ancilla tua, nec jumentum tuum, nec advena qui est intra portas tuas. Nam sex diebus fecit Deus cœlum, terram, & mare, & quæcunque in iis sunt: requievit autem die septimo, ideoque benedixit diei Sabbati, & sanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum, & matrem tuam, ut diu vivas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus daturus est.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium.

X. Non concupisces domum proximi tui, non concupisces uxorem proximi tui, nec servum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec asinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ sunt proximi tui.

SUMMA LEGIS, Matth. xxii. 34.

Pharisei, quum audivissent quòd IESUS silentium imposuisset Sadducæis, congregati sunt pariter: 35. Et interrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tentans eum, & dicens, 36. Præceptor, Quod præceptum maximum est in lege?

37. IESUS autem dixit illi, Ut diligas Dominum Deum tuum, ex toto corde tuo, & ex tota anima tua, & ex omni cogitatione tua. 38. Hoc est præceptum maximum & primum. 39. Secundum autem est simile illi: nempe, Ut diligas proximum tuum sicut te ipsum.

40. Ex his duobus præceptis pendent Lex & Prophetæ.

Quot sunt Christianæ Ecclesiæ Sacramenta?

Duo.

Quæ sunt illa?

Baptismus & sacra Cœna Domini.

INSTITUTIO BAPTISMI:

Cujus hæc sunt verba. Matth. xxviii. 19. Mar. xvi. 15.

ITE & docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos, *In nomine Patris, & Filii, & Spiritus Sancti.* Qui crediderit, & baptizatus fuerit, servabitur: Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos, ut custodiant quicquid mandavi vobis: & ecce ego vobiscum sum omnibus diebus usque ad consummationem sæculi.

Hæc promissio repetitur, cum Scriptura Baptismum nominat Lavacrum regenerationis, & ablutionem peccatorum. Tit. iii. 5. Act. xxii. 16.

INSTITUTIO COENÆ DOMINI:

Cujus hæc sunt verba. 1. Cor. xi. 23.

EGO enim accepi à Domino nostro id quod tradidi vobis; Quòd Dominus noster Iesus Christus, eâ nocte quâ proditus est, accepit panem: & gratis actis, fregit, ac dixit: *Accipite, manducate, hoc est corpus meum, quod pro vobis frangitur: Hoc facite ad memoriam mei.* Itidem & poculum, postquam cœnasset, dicendo: *Hoc poculum est novum illud sœdus per meum sanguinem: Hoc facite, quotiescunque biberitis, in mei recordationem.* Quotiescunque enim ederitis panem hunc, & poculum hoc biberitis, mortem Domini annuntiabitis, usque quò venerit. Itaque quisquis ederit panem hunc, vel biberit poculum Domini indignè, reus est corporis & sanguinis Domini. Probet autem quisque se ipsum, & ita de pane illo edat, & de poculo illo bibat. Nam qui edit & bibit indignè, damnationem sibi ipsi edit & bibit, quia non decernit corpus Domini.

Hæc promissio à Paulo exprimitur, cum inquit,

POculum gratiarum actionis, quo gratias agimus, nonne communio est sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne communio est corporis Christi? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi sumus. Nam omnes unius panis participes sumus.

SUMMULA CATECHISMI.

Triples Hominis Status.

1. } In sanctitate & fanitate.
2. } Sub peccato & morte.
3. } Sub Christi gratia.

Q U Æ S T I O.

Quis hominem creavit?

Responsio. DEUS.

Q. Qualem creavit eum?

R. Sanctum & sanum, mundique dominum.

Q. In quem usum creatus est?

R. Ut Deo inserviret.

Q. Quod servitii genus ab eo exigebat Deus?

R. Legis suæ præstationem.

Q. Num in legis Dei præstatione persistit?

R. Nequaquam: sed eam sedè transgressus est.

Q. Quæ hujus transgressionis pœna?

R. Mors æterna, cum animæ, tum corporis, & ipsi & posteris.

Q. Quomodo inde liberamur?

R. Merâ Dei gratiâ in Christo Iesu, absque nostris meritis.

Q. Cujusmodi persona est Christus?

R. Verè Deus, verèque homo, in persona una.

Q. Quomodo nos liberavit?

R. Morte suâ: mortem enim nobis debitam pro nobis subiit, nosque eripuit.

Q. Num omnes liberantur per Christum?

R. Minimè, sed ii tantum qui fide eum amplectuntur.

Q. Quid est fides?

R. Cum mihi persuadeo Deum me omnesque Sanctos amare, nobisque Christum cum omnibus suis bonis gratis donare.

Q. Recense summam tuæ fidei.

R. Credo in Deum, Patrem, &c.

Q. Quis operatur hanc fidem in nobis?

R. Spiritus Sanctus per Verbum & Sacramenta.

Q. Quomodo eam operatur per Verbum & Sacramenta?

R. Aperit cor, ut Deo loquenti in Verbo & Sacramentis credamus.

Q. Quid est Dei verbum?

R. Quicquid veteris ac novi Testamenti libris continetur.

Q. Verbi Dei quot partes?

R. Duæ, Lex & Evangelium.

Q. Quid est Lex?

R. Doctrina Dei, debitum à nobis exigens, & quia non sumus solvendo, damnans.

Q. Quid

26 SUMMULA CATECHISMI.

Q. Quid Evangelium?

R. Doctrina Christum cum omnibus suis bonis nobis offerens, debitumque nostrum ab eo solutum, nosque liberos esse proclamans.

Q. Quid Sacramenta?

R. Sigilla Dei, significantia & donantia nobis Christum cum omnibus suis bonis.

Q. Quæ hæc Christi bona?

R. Amor Dei, Spiritus Sanctus, unio nostri cum Christo: unde remissio peccatorum, sanatio naturæ, spiritualis nutritio & vita æterna promanant.

Q. Quot sunt Novi Testamenti Sacramenta?

R. Duo, Baptismus & sacra Cæna.

Q. Quid est Baptismus?

R. Sacramentum initionis nostræ in Christum, & ablutionis à peccatis.

Q. Quid initio nostri in Christum?

R. Unio nostri cum Christo: unde manat remissio peccatorum & perpetua resipiscencia.

Q. Baptismus quid juvat fidem?

R. Testatur, ut aquâ corpus abluitur, sic, operante Spiritu Sancto, a peccatorum reatu & radice, per fidem in sanguine Christi nos repurgari.

Q. Quid est sacra Cæna?

R. Sacramentum spiritualis nutritionis nostræ in Christo.

Q. Cæna Domini quid juvat fidem?

R. Testatur, ut pane & vino corpora nostra aluntur & augescunt; sic animas nostras corpore & sanguine Christi crucifixi ali & corroborari ad vitam æternam.

Q. Corpore & sanguine Christi quomodo alimur?

R. Dum fide percipimus, & Spiritus Sancti, qui unâ adest, vi, ea nobis applicamus.

Q. Quando fide percipimus, & nobis applicamus corpus Christi crucifixi?

R. Dum nobis persuademus, Christi mortem et crucifixionem non minùs ad nos pertinere, quàm si ipsi nos pro peccatis nostris crucifixi essemus: Persuasio autem hæc est veræ fidei.

Q. Vera fides quomodo dignoscitur?

R. Per bona opera.

Q. Quomodo cognoscuntur bona opera?

R. Si Dei legi respondeant.

Q. Recita Dei legem.

R. Audi, Israel, Ego sum Dominus, &c.

Q. Hæc lex, de quibus admonet?

R. De officio erga Deum & erga proximum.

Q. Quid officii debes Deo?

R. Supra omnes eum ut amem.

Q. Quid debes proximo?

R. Eum ut amem tanquam me ipsum.

Q. Potis es hæc præstare?

R. Minime gentium; nam tantis

tantissimis

bitat

Q.

istit?

R.

nem &

Q.

bis ver

R. A

us pec

becillit

Q.

R. U

Pater n

CH

desun

Joan. iv.

Apoc. iv.

ens, qui

Psal. c

sapientia

Exod. 3

longanim

Vers. 7

transgressi

Deut. v

Joan. v

Sanctus;

II.

Gen. 1. 2

Vers. 27

nem Dei c

Ecc. 7.

Rom. v.

mors per

omnes pec

Rom. iii

SUMMULA CATECHISMI. 27

tantisper dum hîc vivimus, habitat in nobis peccatum.

Q. *In Dei filiis quid hinc existit?*

R. Perennis pugna inter carnem & spiritum.

Q. *In hac pugna quomodo nobis versandum?*

R. Affiduè orandum, ut Deus peccata nobis remittat, imbecillitatemque sustentet.

Q. *Quomodo orandum?*

R. Ut nos docuit Christus, Pater noster, qui es, &c.

Q. *Quî tibi persuades, Deum donaturum quæ petis?*

R. Quia orare jussit, pollicitusque est, quicquid peterem in Christi nomine, se mihi largiturum.

Q. *Quid debes Deo pro tot beneficiis?*

R. Ut ei gratias agam, perpetuòque serviam.

Q. *Quomodo Deo serviendum?*

R. Ex verbi ipsius præscripto, ut jam dictum est.

PRÆCIPUA CAPITA

CHRISTIANÆ RELIGIONIS,

desumpta è Sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.

I. De DEO.

Joan. iv. 24. **D**EUS est Spiritus.—

Apoc. iv. 8. Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus, Dominus Deus omnipotens, qui fuit, qui est, et qui venturus est.

Psal. cxlvii. 5. Dominus noster est magnus, multarumque virium, & sapientia ejus est immensa.

Exod. xxxiv. 6. ——— Jehova, Jehova Deus, misericors & exorabilis, longanimis, & abundans benignitate & fide:

Vers. 7. Custodiens misericordiam millibus, condonans iniquitatem, transgressionem & peccatum, & qui nullo pacto absolvet nocentem.

Deut. vi. 4. Jehova Deus noster est unus Jehova.

Joan. v. 7. Tres sunt qui testantur in cælo, Pater, Sermo, & Spiritus Sanctus; & hi tres sunt unum.

II. De creatione, lapsu, peccato, & miseria Hominis.

Gen. 1. 26. **E**T Deus dixit, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram, secundum similitudinem nostram.

Vers. 27. Itaque Deus creavit hominem ad imaginem suam, ad imaginem Dei creavit eum.—

Eccl. 7. 29. Deus fecit hominem rectum.—

Rom. v. 12. Peccatum intravit in mundum per unum hominem, & mors per peccatum, et ita mors pervasit ad omnes homines, quatenus omnes peccaverunt.

Rom. iii. 23. Omnes peccaverunt, ac deficiuntur gloriâ Dei.

Pfal. li. 5. En formatus sum in iniquitate, et in peccato mater mea concepit me.

III. De Redemptione generis humani per Iesum Christum.

Joan. iii. 16. **D**EUS sic amavit mundum, ut dederit filium suum unigenitum, ut quisquis credit in eum, non pereat, sed habeat vitam æternam.

1 Jo. iv. 9. Amor Dei patuit ergo nos in hoc, quòd Deus misit filium suum unigenitum in mundum, ut vivamus per eum.

V. 10. In hoc est amor, non quòd nos dilexerimus Deum, sed quòd ipse dilexerit nos, & miserit filium suum, ut esset piaculum pro peccatis nostris.

1 Pet. iii. 18. Christus quoque passus est semel pro peccatis, justus pro injustis, ut adduceret nos ad Deum.

1 Pet. ii. 24. Qui ipsemet sustulit peccata nostra in suo corpore supelignum, ut nos mortui peccatis, viveremus justitiæ; cujus vibicibus sanati sumus.

Tit. ii. 14. Qui dedit seipsum pro nobis ut redimeret nos ab omni iniquitate, & purificaret sibi ipsi populum peculiarem, accensum studio bonorum operum.

IV. De iis quæ Deus à nobis exigit, ut salutem per Christum consequamur.

Act. xvi. 30. **D**ixit, Domini, quid faciendum est mihi, ut sim salvus. *Vers.* 31. Et illi dixerunt, Crede in Dominum Iesum, & salvus eris.

Act. iii. 19. Resipiscite, et convertimini, ut peccata vestra deleantur, cum tempora recreationis venient à conspectu Domini.

Isa. lv. 6. Quærite Jehovah dum possit inveniri; invocate eum dum est propinquus.

Vers. 7. Improbus derelinquat viam suam, & vir iniquus cogitationes suas; revertaturque ad Jehovah, & miserebitur illius: & ad Deum nostrum, quia plurimum condonabit.

Luc. ix. 23. Si quis vult venire post me, ipse abneget se, tollatque suam crucem quotidie, & sequatur me.

Matth. xi. 28. Venite ad me omnes qui laboratis & onerati estis, & ego recreabo vos.

Vers. 20. Attollite jugum meum in vos, & discite à me, quia mitis sum & humilis corde; & invenietis requiem animabus vestris.

Vers. 30. Jugum enim meum est facile, et onus meum est leve.

Heb. v. 9. Perfectus factus est auctor salutis æternæ omnibus obediens tibus sibi.

Jo. xiv. 15. Si amatis me, servate præcepta mea.

Jo. xv. 14. Vos estis amici mei, si feceritis quæcunque ego præcipio vobis.

Tit. ii. 11. Gratia Dei, quæ salutem adfert, apparuit omnibus hominibus. *Vers.* 12. Erudiens nos, ut, abnegatâ impietate & mundanis cupiditatibus, vivamus sobriè, justè, & piè in hoc præsentī seculo.

Mic. vi. 8. Indicavit tibi, O homo! quid sit bonum; & quid exigit Jehova à te, nisi ut æquum facias, & ames misericordiam, & ambules submissè cum Deo tuo?

Col. iii. 5. Mortificate igitur vestra membra terrestria; scortationem, impuritatem, libidinem, cupiditatem malam, & avaritiam, quæ est idololatria.

Vers. 6. Propter quæ, ira Dei venit super filios contumaces.

Vers. 8. — Deponite hæc omnia, iram, excandescantiam, malitiam, maledicentiam, obscœnitatem verborum ex ore vestro.

Vers. 9. Ne mentimini alii aliis.

Vers. 12. Induite igitur (ut electi Dei, sancti amatique) viscera misericordiæ, benignitatem, submissionem animi, lenitatem, patientiam;

Vers. 13. Sufferentes alii alios, et condonantes alii aliis: si quis habet querelam adversus aliquem, quemadmodum Christus condonavit vobis, sic quoque vos facite.

Vers. 14. Super omnia autem induite charitatem, quæ est vinculum perfectionis.

1 Thef. iv. 11. Et ut studeatis esse quieti, & agere res vestras, & operari propriis manibus, sicut præcepimus vobis.

1 Pet. ii. 27. Timete Deum, honorate regem.

Rom. xiii. 1. Omnis anima esto subjecta potestatibus supereminentibus: nulla enim est potestas nisi à Deo: potestates quæ sunt, sunt ordinatæ à Deo.

Vers. 2. Itaque quisquis obstitit potestati, obstitit ordinationi Dei: qui autem obstitit, accipiet condemnationem sibi ipsis.

1 Thef. v. 12. Rogamus autem vos, fratres, ut agnoscatis eos qui laborant inter vos, & præsent vobis in Domino, & admonent vos.

Vers. 13. Et faciatis eos maximi cum amore, propter opus ipsorum.

Heb. xiii. 17. Parete gubernatoribus vestris, & obsequimini, nam ii vigilant pro animabus vestris, tanquam reddituri rationem; ut faciant id cum gaudio, & non cum dolore; id enim est inutile vobis.

Col. iii. 18. Uxores, submittite vos viris vestris, ut convenit in Domino.

Vers. 19. Viri, diligite uxores, & ne estote amarulenti adversus eas.

Eph. vi. 1. Liberi, obedite parentibus vestris in Domino, id enim æquum est.

Vers. 4. Et vos patres, ne provocate liberos vestros ad iram, sed educate eos in disciplina & admonitione Domini.

Col. iii. 22. Servi, obedite dominis vestris in omnibus secundum carnem, non serviendo ad oculum, ut captantes gratiam hominum, sed cum simplicitate cordis, timentes Deum.

Vers. 23. Ac quicquid facitis, agitote id ex animo, tanquam Domino & non hominibus.

Col. iv. 1. Domini, præstate jus et æquum servis vestris, scientes vos quoque habere Dominum in cælis.

Matth. vii. 12. Quæcunque igitur volueritis ut homines faciant vobis, vos facite etiam ita eis.

Matth. xxiv. 13. Qui sustinuerit ad finem, is servabitur.

Gal. vi. 9. Ne defetiscamur rectè faciendo; nam debito tempore metemur, si non fatigemur.

Apoc. ii. 10. Esto fidelis usque ad mortem, & dabo tibi coronam vitæ.

V. De necessitate hæc præstandi.

Jo. iii. 36. **Q**UI credit in filium, habet vitam æternam; qui verò non credit filio, non videbit vitam, sed ira Dei manet super eum.

Luc xiii. 3. 5. Nisi respiscatis, omnes similiter peribitis.

Ezek. xxxiii. 11. Sic ego vivam, inquit Dominus Jehova, ut non delector morte impii, sed ut impius recedat à via sua, & vivat. Recedite, recedite à malis viis vestris, cur enim moreremini?

Ezek. xviii. 30. Respiscite, & avertite vos ab omnibus peccatis vestris ita iniquitas non erit exitio vobis.

V. 31. Abjicite à vobis omnes transgressionem vestras, quibus transgressi estis;

istis; & facite vobis cor novum, & spiritum novum, nam quare moreremini?
Vers. 32. Non enim delector morte morientis, dicit Dominus Jehova;
 convertite igitur vos, & vivite.

Jo. iii. 9.—Nisi quis denuo natus fuerit, non potest videre regnum Dei.

Matth. xviii. 3. Nisi convertamini, & fiatis ut pueruli, non intrabitis in regnum cælorum.

Luc. vi. 46. Quid verò vocatis me, Domine, Domine, & non facitis quæ dico.

Heb. xii. 14. Sectamini pacem cum omnibus, & sanctimoniam, sine qua nemo videbit Dominum.

i Cor. vi. 9. An ignoratis injustos non esse possessuros regnum Dei? Ne errate, neque scortatores, nec idololatræ, nec adulteri, nec molles, nec prædicones,

Vers. 10. Nec fures, nec avari, nec ebriosi, nec conviciatores, nec rapaces possidebunt regnum Dei.

Heb. x. 38.—Si quis se subtraxerit, non erit acceptus animo meo.

VI. De modis obtinendi gratiam à Deo, viresque ad hæc facienda.

Luc. xi. 9. **P**etite & dabitur vobis, quærite & invenietis, pulsate & aperietur vobis.

Vers. 10. Quisquis enim petit, accipit; & qui quærit, invenit; & aperietur pulsanti.

V. 13. Si vos, qui mali estis, sciatis dare bona dona vestris liberis; quanto magis Pater vester cælestis dabit Sanctum Spiritum petentibus a se?

i Pet. iii. 21. Cui rei confimilis figura, nempe Baptismus, nunc quoque servat nōs, non detractio sordium corporis, sed stipulatio bonæ conscientie apud Deum, per resurrectionem Iesu Christi.

i Cor. xi. 23. Dominus Iesus, eà nocte quā proditus est, accepit panem:

Vers. 24. Et gratiis actis, fregit, ac dixit, Accipite, comedite, hoc est meum corpus quod frangitur pro vobis, hoc facite ad memoriam mei.

Vers. 25. Itidem accepit poculum, postquam cœnasset, dicens; Hoc poculum est novum fœdus per meum sanguinem, hoc facite, quoties biberitis, ad memoriam mei.

Vers. 26. Quoties enim ederitis panem hunc, & biberitis poculum hoc, annuntiatis mortem Domini donec veniat.

i Cor. x. 16. Poculum benedictionis cui benedicimus, nonne est communio sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne est communio corporis Christi?

Psal. cxix. 9. Quomodo puer purificabit semitam suam? observando eam secundum verbum tuum.

V. 11. Recondidi sermonem tuum in animo meo, ut non peccem in te.

V. 59. Recogitavi meos mores, & converti pedes meos ad tua testimonia.

V. 60. Festinavi, ac non cunctatus sum, observare mandata tua.

Prov. iii. 5. Confide Jehovæ toto corde, nevé innitere tuæ prudentiæ.

Vers. 6. Agnosce eum in omnibus viis tuis, & is diriget gressus tuos.

VII. De quatuor ultimis, viz. de Morte & Iudicio, Cælo & Inferno.

Heb. ix. 27. **S**tatutum est omnibus hominibus ut semel moriantur, postea verò iudicium.

Jean. v. 28. Hora venit, in qua omnes qui sunt monumentis suis audient ejus vocem.

Vers. 29.

Verf. 29. Et prodibunt qui fecerint bona, in resurrectionem vitæ qui vero egerint mala, in resurrectionem condemnationis.

2 Cor. v. 10. Comparandum est nobis omnibus ante tribunal Christi, ut unusquisque accipiat ea quæ fecerit in corpore, congruenter ad ea quæ fecerit, sive bonum sive malum.

Matth. xiv. 34. Tunc dicet Rex iis qui erunt ad dextram ejus, Adeste, benedicti Patris mei, possidete regnum paratum vobis a jacto fundamento mundi.

Verf. 41. Tunc dicet etiam iis qui erunt ad sinistram, Facecite à me, ex-
ecrati, in æternum ignem paratum diabolo & angelis ejus.

Verf. 46. Et isti abibunt in æternum supplicium, justi verò in æternam vitam.

2 Thef. i. 7. Dominus Iesus revelabitur de cælo cum potentibus angelis suis.

Verf. 8. In flammante igne fumens ultionem de iis qui nesciunt Deum, neque obediunt Evangelio Domini nostri Iesu Christi :

Verf. 9. Qui dabunt pœnas æterno exitio, à facie Domini & a gloria potentia ejus : cum venerit, ut glorificetur in sanctis suis, et ut sit admirandus omnibus credentibus.

Two Prayers to be taught unto Children at School, with a Form of blessing God before and after Meat.

Morning Prayer.

O GOD, I praise thee for the Creation of the World, and for the Redemption of Mankind by the Lord Jesus, and for thy many Favours bestowed on me: Thou didst safely take me from the Womb, and hast ever since cared for me: Thou hast by thy Mercy caused me to be born within thy Church, where I was early given to thee in Baptism: Thou hast afforded me the Means of Grace, and called me to the Hope of Glory.

But, O most merciful Father, I a poor and miserable Sinner, conceived in Sin, and brought forth in Iniquity; have gone astray from thee; I have not cared to know thee, and to do thy Will, but have done my own Will, and followed my foolish and sinful Inclinations, and do therefore deserve thy Wrath and Curse. O Lord, have Mercy upon me, turn me unto thee, and grant me Repentance and Forgiveness of all my Sins for Jesus Sake. Let it from henceforth become my chiefest Care to please thee, and to seek thy Kingdom and Righteousness. Work in me a true Faith, a lively Hope, and a fervent Charity; make me humble, meek, patient, sober and just, and loving to all Men, submissive and obedient to them that are over me, and well content and thankful in every Condition of Life; grant that I may daily grow in knowing, loving, fearing, and obeying thee; create in me a clean Heart, O God, and renew a right Spirit within me.

I thank thee, O Lord, for the Care of me this Night, watch over me this Day; keep me mindful that I am always in thy Sight, that I may be in thy Fear all the Day long: And grant that through the whole Course of my Life I may be holy and harmless in all Manner of Conversation, that, when this short and frail Life is at an End, I may be made partaker of everlasting Life, through the Merits of Jesus Christ our Lord, in whose Name and Words I pray, *Our Father, which art in Heaven, &c.*

Evening

Evening Prayer.

Most gracious God, what shall I render unto thee for thy many and great Benefits bestowed upon me ; though I have been an undutiful and disobedient Servant unto thee. Thou hast continued thy Care and Kindness for me ever since I was born, and hast preserved me this Day ; let me never forget thy Goodness, but grant that thereby I may be led to Repentance and Amendment of Life. Preserve me from every thing that is displeasing to thee. O Lord, keep me from cursing, swearing and lying, from Pride, Stubbornness and Idleness. Work in me an utter Dislike of all Uncleaness, of Gluttony, and Drunkenness, of all Malice and Envy, of Strife and Contention, of Deceit and Covetousness. Give me Grace to deny all Ungodliness and worldly Lusts, and to live godly, righteously, and soberly, in this present World. Cause me to understand and consider the Laws and Life of Jesus, that I may do his Will and follow his Steps. Let never the Cares of this Life, nor the Love of Riches, nor evil Company, nor the corrupt Custom of the World, withdraw me from the Obedience of thy Laws ; but strengthen and establish me by thy Holy Spirit, that I may live and die thy faithful Servant.

O Lord, send thy Gospel thro' the World ; pour out plenteously the Spirit of Truth, Holiness, and Peace, on all People : Bless the Church and Kingdom : Preserve the King and all the Royal Family : Guide our Judges and Magistrates, sanctify and assist the Ministers of the Gospel : Visit all that are in Trouble, and sanctify their Afflictions to them : Be gracious unto all my Kindred, Friends, and Neighbours ; and bless and forgive all mine Enemies.

Lord, watch over me this Night, and keep me ever mindful that I am shortly to die and come to Judgment, that I may without Delay turn to thee, and pass the Time of my sojourning here in thy Fear. Good Lord, hear me, and grant these my Desires, and what else thou knowest to be needful for me, for the Sake of Jesus, in whose Name and Words I pray, *Our Father, &c.*

Grace before Meat.

O Lord, be merciful unto us, and pardon our Sins ; sanctify these thy good Benefits, that we, by the sober and thankful Use of them, may be enabled for thy Service, through Jesus Christ our Lord and Saviour. *Amen.*



Grace after Meat.

We thank and praise thee, O Lord, the Giver of all Good, who hast at this Time fed our Bodies ; stir up in us a greater Care for our Souls ; and grant that our short Lives, which are so carefully sustained by thy Bounty, may be spent in doing thy Will. Lead us safely through this vain and sinful World, in which we are Pilgrims and Strangers, and at length bring us to everlasting Rest, through Jesus Christ. *Amen.*

F I N I S.

and
ful
and
y;
led
ing
and
tter
lice
ive
illy,
and
fol-
hes,
me
thy

the
and
our
oel :
Be
and

I am
n to
ord,
o be
pray,

e thy
hem,
d Sa-

who
or our
ed by
h this
ad at